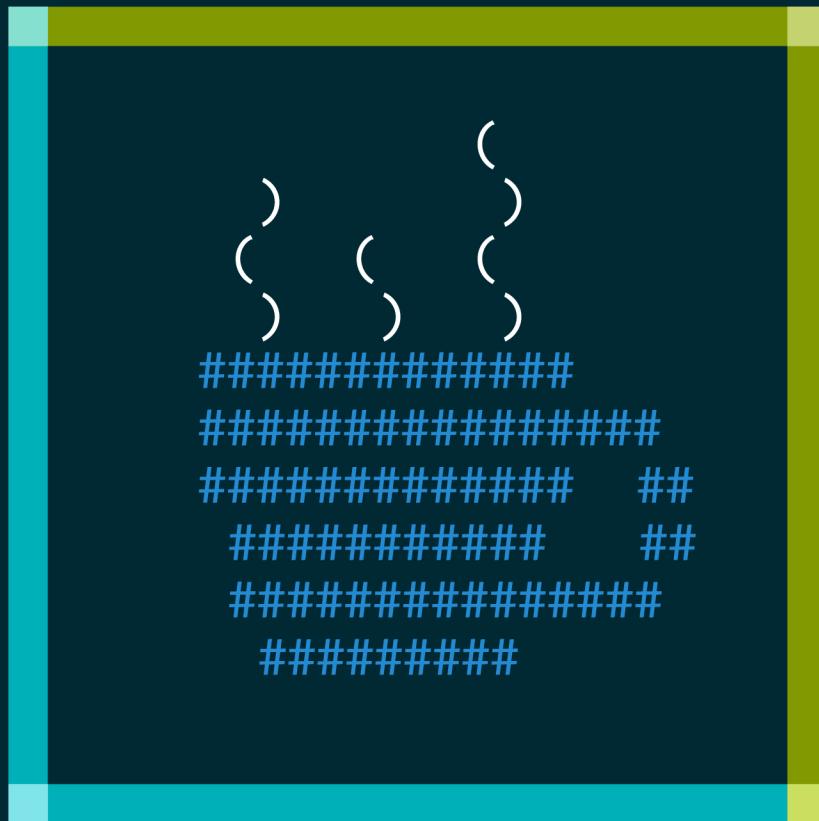


Start learning Backbone.js, Node.js and MongoDB

[AZAT MARDAN]



RAPID PROTOTYPING WITH JS

■ AGILE JAVASCRIPT DEVELOPMENT

Rapid Prototyping with JS

Agile JavaScript Development

Azat Mardan

This book is for sale at <http://leanpub.com/rapid-prototyping-with-js>

This version was published on 2014-05-28



This is a [Leanpub](#) book. Leanpub empowers authors and publishers with the Lean Publishing process. [Lean Publishing](#) is the act of publishing an in-progress ebook using lightweight tools and many iterations to get reader feedback, pivot until you have the right book and build traction once you do.

©2012 - 2014 Azat Mardan

Tweet This Book!

Please help Azat Mardan by spreading the word about this book on [Twitter](#)!

The suggested tweet for this book is:

I've downloaded Rapid Prototyping with JS — book on JavaScript and Node.js by @azat_co #RPJS
@RPJSbook

The suggested hashtag for this book is [#RPJS](#).

Find out what other people are saying about the book by clicking on this link to search for this hashtag on Twitter:

<https://twitter.com/search?q=#RPJS>

Also By Azat Mardan

[Oh My JS](#)

[Express.js Guide](#)

[JavaScript and Node FUNdamentals](#)

Contents

What Readers Say	i
Rapid Prototyping with JS on the Internet	ii
Acknowledgment	iii
Introduction	iv
Why RPJS?	iv
What to Expect	iv
Who This Book is For	v
What This Book is Not	v
Prerequisites	v
How to Use the Book	vi
Examples	vii
Notation	viii
Terms	viii
About the Author	ix
I Quick Start	1
1 Basics	2
1.1 Front-End Definitions	2
1.1.1 Bigger Picture	2
1.1.2 HyperText Markup Language	3
1.1.3 Cascading Style Sheets	5
1.1.4 JavaScript	6
1.2 Agile Methodologies	11
1.2.1 Scrum	12
1.2.2 Test-Driven Development	12
1.2.3 Continuous Deployment and Integration	13
1.2.4 Pair Programming	13
1.3 Back-End Definitions	14
1.3.1 Node.js	14
1.3.2 NoSQL and MongoDB	14
1.3.3 Cloud Computing	15

CONTENTS

1.3.4	HTTP Requests and Responses	15
1.3.5	RESTful API	16
2	Setup	17
2.1	Local Setup	17
2.1.1	Development Folder	17
2.1.2	Browsers	18
2.1.3	IDEs and Text Editors	21
2.1.4	Version Control Systems	23
2.1.5	Local HTTP Servers	26
2.1.6	Database: MongoDB	27
2.1.7	Other Components	31
2.1.7.1	Node.js Installation	31
2.1.7.2	JS Libraries	31
2.1.7.3	LESS App	32
2.2	Cloud Setup	33
2.2.1	SSH Keys	33
2.2.2	GitHub	35
2.2.3	Windows Azure	36
2.2.4	Heroku	37
2.2.5	Cloud9	38
II	Front-End Prototyping	39
3	jQuery and Parse.com	40
3.1	Definitions	40
3.1.1	JavaScript Object Notation	40
3.1.2	AJAX	41
3.1.3	Cross-Domain Calls	42
3.2	jQuery	42
3.3	Twitter Bootstrap	43
3.4	LESS	47
3.4.1	Variables	48
3.4.2	Mixins	48
3.4.3	Operations	49
3.5	Example of using third-party API (Twitter) and jQuery	50
3.6	Parse.com	57
3.7	Chat with Parse.com Overview	60
3.8	Chat with Parse.com: REST API and jQuery version	61
3.9	Pushing to GitHub	69
3.10	Deployment to Windows Azure	70
3.11	Deployment to Heroku	71
3.12	Updating and Deleting of Messages	73
4	Intro to Backbone.js	74

CONTENTS

4.1	Setting up Backbone.js App from Scratch	74
4.1.1	Dependencies	74
4.2	Working with Collections	79
4.3	Event Binding	84
4.4	Views and Subviews with Underscore.js	89
4.5	Refactoring	97
4.6	AMD and Require.js for Development	104
4.7	Require.js for Production	112
4.8	Super Simple Backbone Starter Kit	117
5	Backbone.js and Parse.com	118
5.1	Chat with Parse.com: JavaScript SDK and Backbone.js version	119
5.2	Deploying Chat to PaaS	132
5.3	Enhancing Chat	132
III	Back-End Prototyping	134
6	Node.js and MongoDB	135
6.1	Node.js	135
6.1.1	Building “Hello World” in Node.js	135
6.1.2	Node.js Core Modules	136
6.1.3	Node Package Manager	138
6.1.4	Deploying “Hello World” to PaaS	139
6.1.5	Deploying to Windows Azure	140
6.1.6	Deploying to Heroku	140
6.2	Chat: Run-Time Memory Version	141
6.3	Test Case for Chat	142
6.4	MongoDB	150
6.4.1	MongoDB Shell	150
6.4.2	MongoDB Native Driver	151
6.4.3	MongoDB on Heroku: MongoHQ	152
6.4.4	BSON	157
6.5	Chat: MongoDB Version	158
7	Putting It All Together	161
7.1	Different Domain Deployment	161
7.2	Changing Endpoints	162
7.3	Chat Application	165
7.4	Deployment	167
7.5	Same Domain Deployment	168
8	BONUS: Webapplog Articles	170
8.1	Asynchronicity in Node	170
8.1.1	Non-Blocking I/O	170
8.1.2	Asynchronous Way of Coding	171
8.2	MongoDB Migration with Monk	172

CONTENTS

8.3	TDD in Node.js with Mocha	177
8.3.1	Who Needs Test-Driven Development?	177
8.3.2	Quick Start Guide	177
8.4	Wintersmith – Static Site Generator	179
8.4.1	Getting Started with Wintersmith	180
8.4.2	Other Static Site Generators	182
8.5	Intro to Express.js: Simple REST API app with Monk and MongoDB	182
8.5.1	REST API app with Express.js and Monk	182
8.6	Intro to Express.js: Parameters, Error Handling and Other Middleware	186
8.6.1	Request Handlers	186
8.6.2	Parameters Middleware	187
8.6.3	Error Handling	188
8.6.4	Other Middleware	190
8.6.5	Abstraction	191
8.7	JSON REST API server with Node.js and MongoDB using Mongoskin and Express.js	192
8.7.1	Test Coverage	193
8.7.2	Dependencies	196
8.7.3	Implementation	196
8.7.4	Conclusion	201
8.8	Node.js MVC: Express.js + Derby Hello World Tutorial	201
8.8.1	Node MVC Framework	201
8.8.2	Derby Installation	202
8.8.3	File Structure	202
8.8.4	Dependencies	202
8.8.5	Views	203
8.8.6	Main Server	203
8.8.7	Derby Application	205
8.8.8	Launching Hello World App	206
8.8.9	Passing Values to Back-End	207
	Conclusion and Further Reading	211
	Conclusion	211
	Further Reading	212
	JavaScript resources and free ebooks	212
	JavaScript books	213
	Node.js resources and free ebooks	213
	Node.js books	214
	Interactive online classes and courses	214
	Startup books and blogs	215

What Readers Say

“Azat’s tutorials are crucial to the development of [Sidepon.com](#)¹ interactive UX and the success of getting us featured on [TheNextWeb.com](#)² and reached profitability.” — Kenson Goo ([Sidepon.com](#)³)

“I had a lot of fun reading this book and following its examples! It showcases and helps you discover a huge variety of technologies that everyone should consider using in their own projects.”
— Chema Balsas

Rapid Prototyping with JS is being successfully used at [StartupMonthly](#)⁴ as a training⁵ manual. Here are some of our trainees’ testimonials:

“Thanks a lot to all and special thanks to Azat and Yuri. I enjoyed it a lot and felt motivated to work hard to know these technologies.” — Shelly Arora

“Thanks for putting this workshop together this weekend... what we did with Bootstrap + Parse was really quick & awesome.” — Mariya Yao

“Thanks Yuri and all of you folks. It was a great session - very educative, and it certainly helped me brush up on my Javascript skills. Look forward to seeing/working with you in the future.” — Sam Sur

¹<http://Sidepon.com>

²<http://thenextweb.com>

³<http://Sidepon.com>

⁴<http://startupmonthly.org>

⁵<http://www.startupmonthly.org/rapid-prototyping-with-javascript-and-nodejs.html>

Rapid Prototyping with JS on the Internet

Let's be Friends on the Internet

- Twitter: [@RPJbook](https://twitter.com/rpjbook)⁶ and [@azat_co](https://twitter.com/azat_co)⁷
- Facebook: [facebook.com/RapidPrototypingWithJS](https://www.facebook.com/RapidPrototypingWithJS)⁸
- Website: rapidprototypingwithjs.com⁹
- Blog: webapplog.com¹⁰
- GitHub: github.com/azat-co/rpj¹¹
- Storify: Rapid Prototyping with JS¹²

Other Ways to Reach Us

- Email: hi@rpjs.co¹³
- Google Group: rpjs@googlegroups.com¹⁴ and <https://groups.google.com/forum/#!forum/rpj>

Share on Twitter

“I'm reading Rapid Prototyping with JS – book on agile development with JavaScript and Node.js by @azat_co #RPJS @RPJbook” – <http://clicktotweet.com/biWsd>

⁶<https://twitter.com/rpjbook>

⁷https://twitter.com/azat_co

⁸<https://www.facebook.com/RapidPrototypingWithJS>

⁹<http://rapidprototypingwithjs.com/>

¹⁰<http://webapplog.com>

¹¹<https://github.com/azat-co/rpj>

¹²https://storify.com/azat_co/rapid-prototyping-with-js

¹³<mailto:hi@rpjs.co>

¹⁴<mailto:rpjs@googlegroups.com>

Acknowledgment

I'm grateful to my copy and content editors David Moadel and Lisa Martens. I'm also grateful to the students of ([Hack Reactor¹⁵](#), [Marakana¹⁶](#), [pariSOMA¹⁷](#) and [General Assembly¹⁸](#)) where I taught and used Rapid Prototyping with JS (or its parts) as a training material.

I would like to thank the team of [StartupMonthly¹⁹](#): Yuri and Vadim, for helping me with constructive feedback on the [Rapid Prototyping with JS training²⁰](#) and its manual.

In addition, many gratitudes to my designer friends Ben, Ivan and Natalie who helped me with the cover design feedback.

¹⁵<http://hackreactor.com>

¹⁶<http://marakana.com>

¹⁷<http://pariSOMA.com>

¹⁸<http://generalassembly.ly>

¹⁹<http://startupmonthly.org>

²⁰<http://www.webapplog.com/training/>

Introduction

Summary: reasons behind rapid prototyping in general and writing of this book; answers to questions what to expect and what not, what are prerequisites; suggestions on how to use the book and examples; explanation of book's notation format.

“Get out of the building.” — Steve Blank²¹

Rapid Prototyping with JS is a hands-on book which introduces you to rapid software prototyping using the latest cutting-edge web and mobile technologies including [Node.js²²](#), [MongoDB²³](#), [Twitter Bootstrap²⁴](#), [LESS²⁵](#), [jQuery²⁶](#), [Parse.com²⁷](#), [Heroku²⁸](#) and others.

Why RPJS?

This book was borne out of frustration. I have been in software engineering for many years, and when I started learning Node.js and Backbone.js, I learned the hard way that their official documentation and the Internet lack in quick start guides and examples. Needless to say, it was virtually impossible to find all of the tutorials for JS-related modern technologies in one place.

The best way to *learn* is to *do*, right? Therefore, I've used the approach of small simple examples, i.e., quick start guides, to expose myself to the new cool tech. After I was done with the basic apps, I needed some references and organization. I started to write this manual mostly for myself, so I can understand the concepts better and refer to the samples later. Then [StartupMonthly²⁹](#) and I taught a few 2-day intensive classes on the same subject — helping experienced developers to jump-start their careers with agile JavaScript development. The manual we used was updated and iterated many times based on the feedback received. The end result is this book.

What to Expect

A typical reader of RPJS should expect a collection of quick start guides, tutorials and suggestions (e.g., Git workflow). There is a lot of coding and not much theory. All the theory we cover is directly related to some of

²¹<http://steveblank.com/>

²²<http://nodejs.org>

²³<http://mongodb.org>

²⁴<http://twitter.github.com/bootstrap>

²⁵<http://lesscss.org>

²⁶<http://jquery.com>

²⁷<http://parse.com>

²⁸<http://heroku.com>

²⁹<http://startupmonthly.org>

the practical aspects, and essential for better understanding of technologies and specific approaches in dealing with them, e.g., JSONP and cross-domain calls.

In addition to coding examples, the book covers virtually all setup and deployment step-by-step.

You'll learn on the examples of Chat web/mobile applications starting with front-end components. There are a few versions of these applications, but by the end we'll put front-end and back-end together and deploy to the production environment. The Chat application contains all of the necessary components typical for a basic web app, and will give you enough confidence to continue developing on your own, apply for a job/promotion or build a startup!

Who This Book is For

The book is designed for advanced-beginner and intermediate-level web and mobile developers: somebody who has been (or still is) an expert in other languages like Ruby on Rails, PHP, Perl, Python or/and Java. The type of a developer who wants to learn more about JavaScript and Node.js related techniques for building web and mobile application prototypes *fast*. Our target user doesn't have time to dig through voluminous (or tiny, at the other extreme) official documentation. The goal of *Rapid Prototyping with JS* is not to make an expert out of a reader, but to help him/her to start building apps as soon as possible.

Rapid Prototyping with JS: Agile JavaScript Development, as you can tell from the name, is about taking your idea to a functional prototype in the form of a web or a mobile application as fast as possible. This thinking adheres to the [Lean Startup³⁰](#) methodology; therefore, this book would be more valuable to startup founders, but big companies' employees might also find it useful, especially if they plan to add new skills to their resumes.

What This Book is Not

Rapid Prototyping with JS is **neither** a comprehensive book on several frameworks, libraries or technologies (or just a particular one), **nor** a reference for all the tips and tricks of web development. Examples similar to ones in this book might be *publicly* available online.

Even more so, if you're not familiar with fundamental programming concepts like loops, if/else statements, arrays, hashes, object and functions, you won't find them in *Rapid Prototyping with JS*. Additionally, it would be challenging to follow our examples.

Many volumes of great books have been written on fundamental topics — the list of such resources is at the end of the book in the chapter *Further Reading*. The purpose of *Rapid Prototyping with JS* is to give agile tools without replicating theory of programming and computer science.

Prerequisites

We recommend the following things to get the full advantage of the examples and materials covered:

³⁰<http://theleanstartup.com>

- Knowledge of the fundamental programming concepts such as objects, functions, data structures (arrays, hashes), loops (for, while), conditions (if/else, switch)
- Basic web development skills including, but not limited to, HTML and CSS
- Mac OS X or UNIX/Linux systems are highly recommended for this book's examples and for web development in general, although it's still possible to hack your way on a Windows-based system
- Access to the Internet
- 5-20 hours of time
- Some cloud services require users' credit/debit card information even for free accounts

How to Use the Book

For soft-copy (digital version) the book comes in three formats:

1. PDF: suited for printing; opens in Adobe Reader, Mac OS X Preview, iOS apps, and other PDF viewers.
2. ePub: suited for iBook app on iPad and other iOS devices; to copy to devices use iTunes, Dropbox or email to yourself.
3. mobi: suited for Kindles of all generations as well as desktop and mobile Amazon Kindle apps and Amazon Cloud Reader; to copy to devices use Whispernet, USB cable or email to yourself.

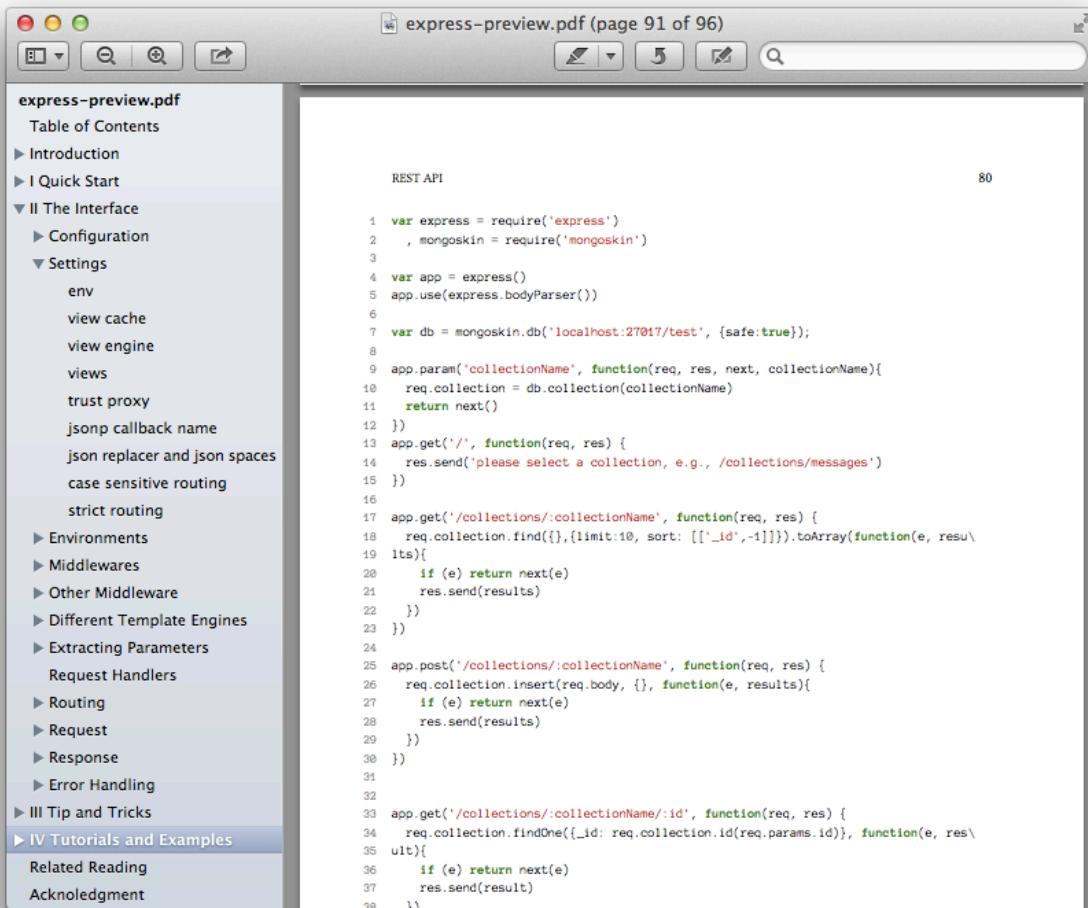
This is a digital version of the book, so most of the links are hidden just like on any other web page, e.g., [jQuery³¹](#) instead of <http://jquery.com>. In the PDF version, URLs are in the footnotes at the bottom of the page. The table of contents has local hyperlinks which allow you to jump to any part or chapter of the book.

There are summaries in the beginning of each chapter describing in a few short sentences what examples and topics the particular chapter covers.

In PDF, EPUB and Mobi versions you could use the **Table of Contents**, which is in the beginning of the book and has internal links, to jump to the most interesting parts or chapters.

For faster navigation between parts, chapters and sections of the book, please use book's navigation pane which is based on the **Table of Contents** (the screenshot is below).

³¹<http://jquery.com>



The Table of Contents pane in the Mac OS X Preview app.

Examples

All of the source code for examples used in this book is available in the book itself for the most part, as well as in a public GitHub repository github.com/azat-co/rpj3³². You can also download files as a [ZIP archive](#)³³ or use Git to pull them. More on how to install and use Git will be covered later in the book. The source code files, folder structure and deployment files are supposed to work locally and/or remotely on PaaS solutions, i.e., Windows Azure and Heroku, with minor or no modifications.

Source code which is in the book is technically limited by the platform to the width of about 70 characters. We tried our best to preserve the best JavaScript and HTML formatting styles, but from time to time you might see backslashes (\). There is nothing wrong with the code. Backslashes are line escape characters, and if you

³²<http://github.com/azat-co/rpjs>

³³<https://github.com/azat-co/rpj/archive/master.zip>

copy-paste the code into the editor, the example should work just fine. Please note that code in GitHub and in the book might differ in formatting. Also, let us know via email (hi@rpjs.co³⁴) if you spot any bugs!

Notation

This is what source code blocks look like:

```
1 var object = {};
2 object.name = "Bob";
```

Terminal commands have a similar look but start with dollar sign or \$:

```
1 $ git push origin heroku
2 $ cd /etc/
3 $ ls
```

Inline file names, path/folder names, quotes and special words/names are *italicized*, while command names, e.g., **mongod**, and emphasized words, e.g., **Note**, are **bold**.

Terms

For the purpose of this book, we're using some terms interchangeably, while depending on the context, they might not mean exactly the same thing. For example, function = method = call, attribute = property = member = key, value = variable, object = hash = class, list = array, framework = library = module.

³⁴<mailto:hi@rpjs.co>

About the Author



Azat Mardan: a software engineer, an author and a yogi.

Azat Mardan has over 12 years of experience in web, mobile and software development. With a Bachelor's Degree in Informatics and a Master of Science in Information Systems Technology degree, Azat possesses deep academic knowledge as well as extensive practical experience.

Currently, Azat works as a Senior Software Engineer at [DocuSign³⁵](#), where his team rebuilds 50 million user product (DocuSign web app) using the tech stack of Node.js, Express.js, Backbone.js, CoffeeScript, Jade, Stylus and Redis.

Recently, he worked as an engineer at the curated social media news aggregator website, [Storify.com³⁶](#) (acquired by [LiveFyre³⁷](#)) which is used by BBC, NBC, CNN, The White House and others. Storify runs everything on Node.js unlike other companies. It's the maintainer of the open-source library [jade-browser³⁸](#).

Before that, Azat worked as a CTO/co-founder at [Gizmo³⁹](#) – an enterprise cloud platform for mobile marketing campaigns, and has undertaken the prestigious [500 Startups⁴⁰](#) business accelerator program.

Prior to this, Azat was developing mission-critical applications for government agencies in Washington, DC, including the [National Institutes of Health⁴¹](#), the [National Center for Biotechnology Information⁴²](#), and the [Federal Deposit Insurance Corporation⁴³](#), as well as [Lockheed Martin⁴⁴](#).

Azat is a frequent attendee at Bay Area tech meet-ups and hackathons ([AngelHack⁴⁵](#) hackathon '12 finalist with team [FashionMetric.com⁴⁶](#)).

³⁵<http://docusign.com>

³⁶<http://storify.com>

³⁷<http://livefyre.com>

³⁸<http://npmjs.org/jade-browser>

³⁹<http://www.crunchbase.com/company/gizmo>

⁴⁰<http://500.co/>

⁴¹<http://nih.gov>

⁴²<http://ncbi.nlm.nih.gov>

⁴³<http://fdic.gov>

⁴⁴<http://lockheedmartin.com>

⁴⁵<http://angelhack.com>

⁴⁶<http://fashionmetric.com>

In addition, Azat teaches technical classes at General Assembly⁴⁷, Hack Reactor⁴⁸, pariSOMA⁴⁹ and Marakana⁵⁰ (acquired by Twitter) to much acclaim.

In his spare time, he writes about technology on his blog: [webAppLog.com](#)⁵¹ which is number one⁵² in “express.js tutorial” Google search results. Azat is also the author of [Express.js Guide](#)⁵³, [Rapid Prototyping with JS](#)⁵⁴ and [Oh My JS](#)⁵⁵; and the creator of open-source Node.js projects, including [ExpressWorks](#)⁵⁶, [mongoui](#)⁵⁷ and [HackHall](#)⁵⁸.

Let's be Friends on the Internet

- Twitter: [@RPJSbook](#)⁵⁹ and [@azat_co](#)⁶⁰
- Facebook: [facebook.com/RapidPrototypingWithJS](#)⁶¹
- Website: [rapidprototypingwithjs.com](#)⁶²
- Blog: [webapplog.com](#)⁶³
- GitHub: [github.com/azat-co/rpjs](#)⁶⁴
- Storify: [Rapid Prototyping with JS](#)⁶⁵

Other Ways to Reach Us

- Email: hi@rpjs.co⁶⁶
- Google Group: rpjs@googlegroups.com⁶⁷ and <https://groups.google.com/forum/#!forum/rpjs>

Share on Twitter

“I've finished reading the Rapid Prototyping with JS: Agile JavaScript Development book by @azat_co <http://rpjs.co> #nodejs #mongodb” – <http://ctt.ec/4Vw73>

⁴⁷<http://generalassembly.ly>

⁴⁸<http://hackreactor.com>

⁴⁹<http://parisoma.com>

⁵⁰<http://marakana.com>

⁵¹<http://webapplog.com>

⁵²<http://expressjsguide.com/assets/img/expressjs-tutorial.png>

⁵³<http://expressjsguide.com>

⁵⁴<http://rpjs.co>

⁵⁵<http://leanpub.com/ohmyjs>

⁵⁶<http://npmjs.org/expressworks>

⁵⁷<http://npmjs.org/mongoui>

⁵⁸<http://hackhall.com>

⁵⁹<https://twitter.com/rpjsbook>

⁶⁰https://twitter.com/azat_co

⁶¹<https://www.facebook.com/RapidPrototypingWithJS>

⁶²<http://rapidprototypingwithjs.com/>

⁶³<http://webapplog.com>

⁶⁴<https://github.com/azat-co/rpjs>

⁶⁵https://storify.com/azat_co/rapid-prototyping-with-js

⁶⁶<mailto:hi@rpjs.co>

⁶⁷<mailto:rpjs@googlegroups.com>

I Quick Start

1 Basics

Summary: overview of HTML, CSS, and JavaScript syntaxes; brief introduction to Agile methodology; advantages of cloud computing, Node.js and MongoDB; descriptions of HTTP requests/responses, RESTful API concepts.

“I think everyone should learn how to program a computer, because it teaches you how to think. I view computer science as a liberal art, something everyone should learn to do.” — Steve Jobs

1.1 Front-End Definitions

1.1.1 Bigger Picture

The bigger picture of web and mobile application development consists of the following steps:

1. User types a URL or follows a link in her browser (a.k.a. client)
2. Browser makes HTTP request to the server
3. Server processes the request, and if there are any parameters in a query string and/or body of the request, it takes them into account
4. Server updates/gets/transforms data in the database
5. Server responds with HTTP response containing data in HTML, JSON or other formats
6. Browser receives HTTP response
7. Browser renders HTTP response to the user in HTML or any other format, e.g., JPEG, XML, JSON

Mobile applications act in the same manner as regular websites, only instead of a browser there is a native app. Other minor differences include: data transfer limitation due to carrier bandwidth, smaller screens, and the more efficient use of the local storage.

There are a few approaches to mobile development, each with its own advantages and disadvantages:

- Native iOS, Android, Blackberry apps build with Objective-C and Java
- Native apps build with JavaScript in [Appcelerator¹](#), or similar tools, and then complied into native Objective-C or Java
- Mobile websites tailored for smaller screens with responsive design, CSS frameworks like [Twitter Bootstrap²](#) or [Foundation³](#), regular CSS or different templates

¹<http://www.appcelerator.com/>

²<http://twitter.github.io/bootstrap/>

³<http://foundation.zurb.com/>

- HTML5 apps which consist of HTML, CSS and JavaScript, and are usually built with frameworks like [Sencha Touch⁴](#), [Trigger.io⁵](#), [JO⁶](#), and then wrapped into native app with [PhoneGap⁷](#)

1.1.2 HyperText Markup Language

A HyperText Markup Language, or HTML, is not a programming language in itself. It is a set of markup tags which describe the content and present it in a structured and formatted way. HTML tags consist of a **tag name** inside of the angle brackets (<>). In most cases, tags surround the content with the end tag having **forward slash** before the tag name.

In this example, each line is an HTML element:

```
1 <h2>Overview of HTML</h2>
2 <div>HTML is a ...</div>
3 <link rel="stylesheet" type="text/css" href="style.css" />
```

An HTML document itself is an element of the *html* tag, and all other elements are children of that *html* tag:

```
1 <!DOCTYPE html>
2 <html lang="en">
3   <head>
4     <link rel="stylesheet" type="text/css" href="style.css" />
5   </head>
6   <body>
7     <h2>Overview of HTML</h2>
8     <p>HTML is a ...</p>
9   </body>
10 </html>
```

There are different flavors and versions of HTML, e.g., DHTML, XHTML 1.0, XHTML 1.1, XHTML 2, HTML 4, HTML 5. This article does a good job of explaining the differences — [Misunderstanding Markup: XHTML 2/HTML 5 Comic Strip⁸](#).

Any HTML element can have attributes. The most important of them are: class, id, style, data-name, onclick, and other event attributes.

class

Class attribute defines a class which is used for styling in CSS or DOM manipulation, e.g.:

⁴<http://www.sencha.com/products/touch/>

⁵<https://trigger.io/>

⁶<http://joapp.com/>

⁷<http://phonegap.com/>

⁸<http://coding.smashingmagazine.com/2009/07/29/misunderstanding-markup-xhtml-2-comic-strip/>

```
1 <p class="normal">...</p>
```

id

Id attribute defines an ID which is similar in purpose to element class but has to be unique, e.g.:

```
1 <div id="footer">...</div>
```

style

Style attribute defines inline CSS to style an element, e.g.:

```
1 <font style="font-size:20px">...</font>
```

title

Title attribute specifies additional information which is usually presented in tooltips by most browsers, e.g.:

```
1 <a title="Up-vote the answer">...</a>
```

data-name

Data-name attribute allows for meta data to be stored in DOM, e.g.:

```
1 <tr data-token="fa10a70c-21ca-4e73-aaf5-d889c7263a0e">...</tr>
```

onclick

Onclick attribute calls inline JavaScript code when click event happens, e.g.:

```
1 <input type="button" onclick="validateForm();">...</a>
```

onmouseover

Onmouseover attribute is similar to onclick but for mouse hover events, e.g.:

```
1 <a onmouseover="javascript: this.setAttribute('css','color:red')">...</a>
```

Other HTML element attributes for inline JavaScript code are:

- onfocus: when browser focuses on an element
- onblur: when browser focus leaves an element
- onkeydown: when a user presses a keyboard key
- ondblclick: when a user double-clicks the mouse
- onmousedown: when a user presses a mouse button

- onmouseup: when a user releases a mouse button
- onmouseout: when a user moves mouse out of the element area
- oncontextmenu: when a user brings up a context menu

The full list of such events and a browser compatibility table are presented in [Event compatibility tables⁹](#).

We'll use classes extensively with Twitter Bootstrap framework, while the use of inline CSS and JavaScript code is generally a **bad** idea, so we'll try to avoid it. However, it's good to know the names of the JavaScript events because they are used all over the place in jQuery, Backbone.js and of course plain JavaScript. To convert the list of attribute to a list of JS events, just remove the prefixes on, e.g., onclick attribute means click event.

More information is available at [Example: Catching a mouse click¹⁰](#), [Wikipedia¹¹](#) and [w3schools¹²](#).

1.1.3 Cascading Style Sheets

Cascading Style Sheets, or CSS, is a way to format and present content. An HTML document can have an external stylesheet included in it by a `link` tag, as shown in the previous examples, or can have CSS code directly inside of a `style` tag:

```

1 <style>
2   body {
3     padding-top: 60px; /* 60px to make some space */
4   }
5 </style>
```

Each HTML element can have `id` and/or `class` attributes:

```

1 <div id="main" class="large">
2   Lorem ipsum dolor sit amet,
3   Duis sit amet neque eu.
4 </div>
```

In CSS we access elements by their `id`, `class`, tag name and in some edge cases by parent-child relationship or element attribute value.

This sets a color of all the paragraphs (`p` tag) to grey (#999999):

⁹<http://www.quirksmode.org/dom/events/index.html>

¹⁰https://developer.mozilla.org/en-US/docs/JavaScript/Getting_Started#Example:_Catching_a_mouse_click

¹¹<http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/HTML>

¹²http://www.w3schools.com/html/html_intro.asp

```

1 p {
2   color:#999999;
3 }
```

This sets padding of a div element with id main:

```

1 div#main {
2   padding-bottom:2em;
3   padding-top:3em;
4 }
```

This sets the font size to 14 pixels for all elements with a class large:

```

1 .large {
2   font-size:14pt;
3 }
```

This hides div which are direct children of body element:

```

1 body > div {
2   display:none;
3 }
```

This sets the width to 150 pixels for input which name attribute is email:

```

1 input[name="email"] {
2   width:150px;
3 }
```

More information is available at [Wikipedia¹³](#) and [w3schools¹⁴](#).

CSS3 is an upgrade to CSS which includes new ways of doing things such as rounded corners, borders and gradients, which were possible in regular CSS only with the help of PNG/GIF images and by using other tricks.

For more information refer to [CSS3.info¹⁵](#), [w3school¹⁶](#) and CSS3 vs. CSS comparison article on [Smashing¹⁷](#).

1.1.4 JavaScript

JavaScript was started in 1995 at Netscape as LiveScript. It has the same relationship with Java as a hamster and a ham. :-) These days, JavaScript is used for both client and server-side web, as well as in desktop application development.

Putting JS code into a *script* tag is the easiest way to use JavaScript in an HTML document:

¹³http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Cascading_Style_Sheets

¹⁴<http://www.w3schools.com/css/>

¹⁵<http://css3.info>

¹⁶<http://www.w3schools.com/css3/default.asp>

¹⁷<http://coding.smashingmagazine.com/2011/04/21/css3-vs-css-a-speed-benchmark/>

```

1 <script type="text/javascript" language="javascript">
2   alert("Hello world!");
3   //simple alert dialog window
4 </script>

```

Be advised that mixing HTML and JS code is not a good idea, so to separate them we can move the code to an external file, and include it by setting source attribute `src="filename.js"` on `script` tag, e.g., for `app.js` resource:

```

1 <script src="js/app.js" type="text/javascript" language="javascript">
2 </script>

```



Note

The closing `</script>` tag is mandatory even with an empty element like we have where we include the external source file. **Type** and **language** attributes over the years became optional in modern browsers due to the overwhelming JavaScript dominance.

Other ways to run JavaScript include:

- Inline approach already covered above
- WebKit browser Developer Tools and FireBug consoles
- The interactive Node.js shell

One of the advantages of the JavaScript language is that it's loosely typed. This loose/weak typing, as opposed to **strong typing**¹⁸ in languages like C and Java, makes JavaScript a better programming language for prototyping. Here are some of the main types of JavaScript objects/classes (there are not classes per se; objects inherit from objects):

Number primitives

Numerical values, e.g.:

```

1 var num = 1;

```

Number Object

Number¹⁹ object and its methods, e.g.:

¹⁸http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Strong_typing

¹⁹https://developer.mozilla.org/en-US/docs/JavaScript/Reference/Global_Objects/Number

```

1 var numObj = new Number("123"); //Number object
2 var num = numObj.valueOf(); //number primitive
3 var numStr = numObj.toString(); //string representation

```

String primitives

Sequences of characters inside of single or double quotes, e.g.:

```

1 var str = "some string";
2 var newStr = "abcde".substr(1,2);

```

For convenience, JS automatically wraps string primitives with String object methods, but they are not quite the same²⁰.

String object

String object has a lot of useful methods, like `length`, `match`, etc., for example:

```

1 var strObj = new String("abcde");//String object
2 var str = strObj.valueOf(); //string primitive
3 strObj.match(/ab/);
4 str.match(/ab/); //both call will work

```

RegExp object

Regular Expressions or RegExps are patterns of characters used in finding matches, replacing, testing of strings:

```

1 var pattern = /[A-Z]+/;
2 str.match(/ab/);

```

Special Types

When in doubt, you can always call `typeof obj`. Here are some of the special types used in JS:

- NaN
- null
- undefined
- function

Globals

You can call these methods from anywhere in your code, because they are global methods:

²⁰https://developer.mozilla.org/en-US/docs/JavaScript/Reference/Global_Objects/String#Distinction_between_string_primitives_and_String_objects

- decodeURI
- decodeURIComponent
- encodeURI
- encodeURIComponent
- eval
- isFinite
- isNaN
- parseFloat
- parseInt
- uneval
- Infinity
- Intl

JSON

JSON library allows us to parse and serialize JavaScript objects, e.g.:

```
1 var obj = JSON.parse('{a:1, b:"hi"}');
2 var stringObj = JSON.stringify({a:1,b:"hi"});
```

Array object

Arrays²¹ are zero-index-based lists. For example, to create an array:

```
1 var arr = new Array();
2 var arr = ["apple", "orange", 'kiwi'];
```

The Array object has a lot of nice methods, like `indexOf`, `slice`, `join`. Make sure that you're familiar with them, because if used correctly, they'll save a lot of time.

Data Object

```
1 var obj = {name: "Gala", url:"img/gala100x100.jpg",price:129}
```

or

```
1 var obj = new Object();
```

More on inheritance patterns below.

Boolean primitives and objects

Same as with String and Number, Boolean²² can be a primitive and an object.

²¹https://developer.mozilla.org/en-US/docs/JavaScript/Reference/Global_Objects/Array

²²https://developer.mozilla.org/en-US/docs/JavaScript/Reference/Global_Objects/Boolean

```

1 var bool1 = true;
2 var bool2 = false;
3 var boolObj = new Boolean(false);

```

Date object

[Date²³](#) objects allow us to work with dates and time, e.g.:

```

1 var timestamp = Date.now(); // 1368407802561
2 var d = new Date(); //Sun May 12 2013 18:17:11 GMT-0700 (PDT)

```

Math object

Mathematical constants and [functions²⁴](#), e.g.:

```

1 var x = Math.floor(3.4890);
2 var ran = Math.round(Math.random()*100);

```

Browser objects

Gives us access to browser and its properties like URL, e.g.:

```

1 window.location.href = 'http://rapidprototypingwithjs.com';
2 console.log("test");

```

DOM objects

```

1 document.write("Hello World");
2 var table = document.createElement('table');
3 var main = document.getElementById('main');

```



Warning

JavaScript supports numbers only up to 53-bit in size. Check out large numbers' libraries if you need to deal with numbers larger than that.

The full references of JavaScript and DOM objects are available at [Mozilla Developer Network²⁵](#) and [w3school²⁶](#).

For JS resources such as ECMA specs, check out this list [JavaScript Language Resources²⁷](#). As of this writing, the latest JavaScript specification is ECMA-262 Edition 5.1: [PDF²⁸](#) and [HTML²⁹](#).

Another important distinction of JS is that it's a functional and prototypal language. Typical syntax for function declaration looks like this:

²³https://developer.mozilla.org/en-US/docs/JavaScript/Reference/Global_Objects/Date

²⁴https://developer.mozilla.org/en-US/docs/JavaScript/Reference/Global_Objects/Math

²⁵<https://developer.mozilla.org/en-US/docs/JavaScript/Reference>

²⁶<http://www.w3schools.com/jsref/default.asp>

²⁷https://developer.mozilla.org/en-US/docs/JavaScript/Language_Resources

²⁸<http://www.ecma-international.org/publications/files/ECMA-ST/Ecma-262.pdf>

²⁹<http://www.ecma-international.org/ecma-262/5.1/>

```

1 function Sum(a,b) {
2   var sum = a+b;
3   return sum;
4 }
5 console.log(Sum(1,2));

```

Functions in JavaScript are [first-class citizens³⁰](#) due to the [functional programming³¹](#) nature of the language. Therefore, functions can be used as other variables/objects; for example, functions can be passed to other functions as arguments:

```

1 var f = function (str1){
2   return function(str2){
3     return str1+' '+str2;
4   };
5 };
6 var a = f('hello');
7 var b = f('goodbye');
8 console.log((a('Catty')));
9 console.log((b('Doggy')));

```

It's good to know that there are several ways to instantiate an object in JS:

- Classical inheritance³² pattern
- Pseudo classical inheritance³³ pattern
- Functional inheritance pattern

For further reading on inheritance patterns, check out [Inheritance Patterns in JavaScript³⁴](#) and [Inheritance revisited³⁵](#).

More information about browser-run JavaScript is available at [Mozilla Developer Network³⁶](#), [Wikipedia³⁷](#) and [w3schools³⁸](#).

1.2 Agile Methodologies

The Agile software development methodology evolved due to the fact that traditional methods like Waterfall weren't good enough in situations of high unpredictability, i.e., when [the solution is unknown³⁹](#). Agile methodology includes Scrum/Sprint, Test-Driven Development, Continuous Deployment, Paired Programming and other practical techniques, many of which were borrowed from Extreme Programming.

³⁰http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/First-class_function

³¹http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Functional_programming

³²<http://www.crockford.com/javascript/inheritance.html>

³³<http://javascript.info/tutorial/pseudo-classical-pattern>

³⁴<http://bolinfest.com/javascript/inheritance.php>

³⁵https://developer.mozilla.org/en-US/docs/JavaScript/Guide/Inheritance_Revisited

³⁶<https://developer.mozilla.org/en-US/docs/JavaScript/Reference>

³⁷<http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/JavaScript>

³⁸<http://www.w3schools.com/js/default.asp>

³⁹<http://www.startuplessonslearned.com/2009/03/combining-agile-development-with.html>

1.2.1 Scrum

In regard to the management, Agile methodology uses Scrum approach. More about Scrum can be read at:

- [Scrum Guide in PDF⁴⁰](#)
- [Scrum.org⁴¹](#)
- [Scrum development Wikipedia article⁴²](#)

The Scrum methodology is a sequence of short cycles, and each cycle is called **sprint**. One sprint usually lasts from one to two weeks. A typical sprint starts and ends with a sprint planning meeting where new tasks are assigned to team members. New tasks cannot be added to the sprint in progress; they can be added only at the sprint meetings.

An essential part of the Scrum methodology is the daily **scrum** meeting — hence the name. Each scrum is a 5-to-15-minutes-long meeting which is often conducted in the hallways. In scrum meetings, each team member answers three questions:

1. What have you done since yesterday?
2. What are you going to do today?
3. Do you need anything from other team members?

Flexibility makes Agile an improvement over Waterfall methodology, especially in situations of high uncertainty, i.e., in startups.

The advantage of Scrum methodology: effective where it is hard to plan ahead of time, and also in situations where a feedback loop is used as a main decision-making authority.

1.2.2 Test-Driven Development

Test-Driven Development, or TDD, consists of the following steps:

1. Write failing automated test cases for new feature/tasks or enhancement by using assertions that are either true or false.
2. Write code to successfully pass the test cases.
3. Refactor code if needed, and add functionality while keeping the test cases passed.
4. Repeat until all tasks are complete.

Tests can be split into functional and unit testing. The latter is when a system tests individual units, methods and functions with dependencies mocked up, while the former (a.k.a., integration testing) is when a system tests a slice of a functionality, including dependencies.

The advantages of Test-Driven Development:

⁴⁰http://www.scrum.org/storage/scrumguides/Scrum_Guide.pdf

⁴¹<http://www.scrum.org/>

⁴²[http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Scrum_\(development\)](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Scrum_(development))

- Fewer bugs/defects
- More efficient codebase
- Confidence that code works and doesn't break the old functionality

1.2.3 Continuous Deployment and Integration

Continuous Deployment, or CD, is the set of techniques to rapidly deliver new features, bug fixes, and enhancements to the customers. CD includes automated testing and automated deployment. By utilizing Continuous Deployment, the manual overhead is decreased and the feedback loop time is minimized. Basically, the faster a developer can get the feedback from the customers, the sooner the product can pivot, which leads to more advantages over the competition. Many startups deploy multiple times in a single day in comparison to the 6-to-12-month release cycle which is still typical for corporations and big companies.

The advantages of the Continuous Deployment approach: decreases feedback loop time and manual labor overhead.

The difference between Continuous Deployment and Continuous Integration is outlined in the post [Continuous Delivery vs. Continuous Deployment vs. Continuous Integration - Wait huh?](#)⁴³

Some of the most popular solutions for Continuous Integration:

- [Jenkins](#)⁴⁴: An extendable open source continuous integration server
- [CircleCI](#)⁴⁵: Ship better code, faster
- [Travis CI](#)⁴⁶: A hosted continuous integration service for the open source community

1.2.4 Pair Programming

Pair Programming is a technique when two developers work together in one environment. One of the developers is a driver, and the other is an observer. The driver writes code, and the observer assists by watching and making suggestions. Then they switch roles. The driver has a more tactical role of focusing on the current task. In contrast, the observer has a more strategic role, overseeing "the bigger picture" and finding bugs and ways to improve an algorithm.

The advantages of Paired Programming:

- Pairs attributes to shorter and more efficient codebase, and introduces fewer bugs and defects.
- As an added bonus, knowledge is passed along programmers as they work together. However, situations of conflicts between developers are possible, and not uncommon at all.

⁴³<http://blog.assemblablog.tabid/12618/bid/92411/Continuous-Delivery-vs-Continuous-Deployment-vs-Continuous-Integration-Wait-huh.aspx>

⁴⁴<http://jenkins-ci.org/>

⁴⁵<https://circleci.com/>

⁴⁶<https://travis-ci.org/>

1.3 Back-End Definitions

1.3.1 Node.js

Node.js is an open-source event-driven asynchronous I/O technology for building scalable and efficient web servers. Node.js consists of Google's [V8 JavaScript engine](#)⁴⁷ and is maintained by cloud company [Joyent](#)⁴⁸.

The purpose and use of Node.js is similar to [Twisted](#)⁴⁹ for Python and [EventMachine](#)⁵⁰ for Ruby. The JavaScript implementation of Node was the third one after attempts at using Ruby and C++ programming languages.

Node.js is not in itself a framework like Ruby on Rails; it's more comparable to the pair PHP+Apache. More on Node.js frameworks later in the *Node.js and MongoDB* chapter.

The advantages of using Node.js:

- Developers have high likelihood of familiarity with JavaScript language due to its status as a de facto standard for web and mobile development
- One language for front-end and back-end development speeds up the coding process. A developer's brain doesn't have to switch between different syntaxes. So-called context switch. The learning of methods and classes goes faster.
- With Node.js, you could prototype quickly and go to market to do your customer development and customer acquisition early. This is an important competitive advantage over the other companies, which use less agile technologies, e.g., PHP and MySQL.
- Node.js is built to support real-time applications by utilizing web-sockets.

For more information go to [Wikipedia](#)⁵¹, [Nodejs.org](#)⁵², and articles on [ReadWrite](#)⁵³ and [O'Reilly](#)⁵⁴.

For the current state of Node.js as of this writing, refer to [State of the Node slides by Isaac Z. Schlueter – 2013](#)⁵⁵.

1.3.2 NoSQL and MongoDB

MongoDB, from huMONGous, is a high-performance no-relationship database for huge quantities of data. The NoSQL concept came out when traditional Relational Database Management Systems, or RDBMS, were unable to meet the challenges of huge amounts of data.

The advantages of using MongoDB:

- Scalability: due to a distributed nature, multiple servers and data centers can have redundant data.

⁴⁷[http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/V8_\(JavaScript_engine\)](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/V8_(JavaScript_engine))

⁴⁸<http://joyent.com>

⁴⁹<http://twistedmatrix.com/trac/>

⁵⁰<http://rubyeventmachine.com/>

⁵¹<http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Nodejs>

⁵²<http://nodejs.org/about/>

⁵³<http://readwrite.com/2011/01/25/wait-whats-nodejs-good-for-a-ga>

⁵⁴<http://radar.oreilly.com/2011/07/what-is-node.html>

⁵⁵<http://j.mp/2013-state-of-the-node>

- High-performance: MongoDB is very effective for storing and retrieving data, partially owing to the absence of relationships between elements and collections in the database.
- Flexibility: a key-value store is ideal for prototyping because it doesn't require developers to know the schema and there is no need for a fixed data models, or complex migrations.

1.3.3 Cloud Computing

Cloud computing consists of:

- Infrastructure as a Service (IaaS), e.g., Rackspace, Amazon Web Services
- Platform as a Service (PaaS), e.g., Heroku, Windows Azure
- Backend as a Service (BaaS — newest, coolest kid on the block), e.g., Parse.com, Firebase
- Software as a Service (SaaS), e.g., Google Apps, Salesforce.com

Cloud application platforms provide:

- Scalability, e.g., spawn new instances in a matter of minutes;
- Ease of deployment, i.e., to push to Heroku you can just use `$ git push`
- Pay-as-you-go plans where users add or remove memory and disk space based on demands
- Add-ons for easier installation and configuration of databases, app servers, packages, etc.
- Security and support

PaaS and BaaS are ideal for prototyping, building minimal viable products (MVP) and for early-stage startups in general.

Here is the list of most popular PaaS solutions:

- [Heroku⁵⁶](#)
- [Windows Azure⁵⁷](#)
- [Nodejitsu⁵⁸](#)
- [Nodester⁵⁹](#)

1.3.4 HTTP Requests and Responses

Each HTTP Request and Response consists of the following components:

1. Header: information about encoding, length of the body, origin, content type, etc.
2. Body: content, usually parameters or data which is passed to the server or sent back to a client

⁵⁶<http://heroku.com>

⁵⁷<http://windowsazure.com>

⁵⁸<http://nodejitsu.com/>

⁵⁹<http://nodester.com>

In addition, the HTTP Request contains:

- Method: There are several methods with the most common being GET, POST, PUT and DELETE
- URL: host, port, path, e.g., <https://graph.facebook.com/498424660219540>
- Query string: everything after a question mark in the URL (e.g., ?q=rpjs&page=20)

1.3.5 RESTful API

RESTful (REpresentational State Transfer) API became popular due to the demand in distributed systems whereby each transaction needs to include enough information about the state of the client. In a sense, this standard is stateless because no information about the clients' states is stored on the server, thus making it possible for each request to be served by a different system.

Distinct characteristics of RESTful API:

- Has better scalability support due to the fact that different components can be independently deployed to different servers
- Replaced Simple Object Access Protocol (SOAP) because of the simpler verb and noun structure
- Utilizes HTTP methods: GET, POST, DELETE, PUT, OPTIONS, etc.

Here is an example of simple Create, Read, Update and Delete (CRUD) REST API for Message Collection:

Method	URL	Meaning
GET	/messages.json	Return list of messages in JSON format
PUT	/messages.json	Update/replace all messages and return status/error in JSON
POST	/messages.json	Create new message and return its id in JSON format
GET	/messages/{id}.json	Return message with id {id} in JSON format
PUT	/messages/{id}.json	Update/replace message with id {id}, if {id} message doesn't exists create it
DELETE	/messages/{id}.json	Delete message with id {id}, return status/error in JSON format

REST is not a protocol; it is an architecture in the sense that it's more flexible than SOAP, which is a protocol. Therefore, REST API URLs could look like /messages/list.html or /messages/list.xml in case we want to support these formats.

PUT and DELETE are [idempotent methods⁶⁰](#), which means that if the server receives two or more similar requests, the end result will be the same.

GET is nullipotent and POST is not idempotent and might affect state and cause side-effects.

Further reading on REST API can be found at [Wikipedia⁶¹](#) and [A Brief Introduction to REST article⁶²](#).

⁶⁰http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Hypertext_Transfer_Protocol#Idempotent_methods_and_web_applications

⁶¹http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Representational_state_transfer

⁶²<http://www.infoq.com/articles/rest-introduction>

2 Setup

Summary: suggestions for the toolset; step-by-step installation of local components; preparation for the use of cloud services.

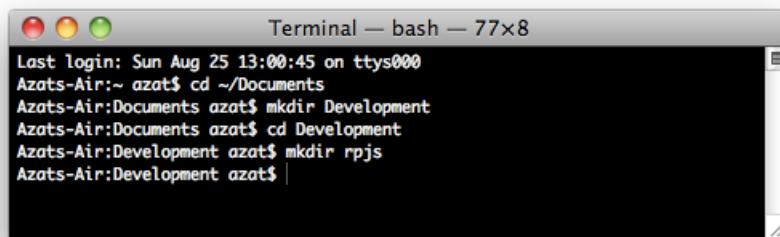
“One of my most productive days was throwing away 1,000 lines of code.” - Ken Thompson¹

2.1 Local Setup

2.1.1 Development Folder

If you don't have a specific development folder for your web development projects, you could create a *Development* folder in the *Documents* folder (path will be *Documents/Development*). To work on the code example, create a *rpjs* folder inside your web development projects folder, e.g., if you create a *rpjs* folder inside of the *Development* folder, the path will be *Documents/Development/rpjs*. You could use the Finder on Mac OS X or the following terminal commands on OS X/Linux systems:

```
1 $ cd ~/Documents
2 $ mkdir Development
3 $ cd Development
4 $ mkdir rpjs
```



Initial development environment setup.



Tip

To open Mac OS Finder app in the current directory from Terminal, just type and run the `$ open .` command.

¹http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Ken_Thompson

To get the list of files and folders, use this UNIX/Linux command:

```
1 $ ls
```

or to display hidden files and folders, like `.git`:

```
1 $ ls -lah
```

Another alternative to `$ ls` is `$ ls -alt`. The difference between the `-lah` and the `-alt` options is that the latter sorts items chronologically and the former alphabetically.



Note

You can use the Tab key to autocomplete names of the files and folders.

Later, you could copy examples into the `rpjs` folder as well as create apps in that folder.



Note

Another useful thing is to have the “New Terminal at Folder” option in Finder on Mac OS X. To enable it, open your “System Preferences” (you could use Command + Space, a.k.a. Spotlight, for it). Find “Keyboard” and click on it. Open “Keyboard Shortcuts” and click on “Services.” Check the “New Terminal at Folder” and “New Terminal Tab at Folder” boxes. Close the window (optional).

2.1.2 Browsers

We recommend downloading the latest version of the [WebKit²](#) or [Gecko³](#) browser of your choice: [Chrome⁴](#), [Safari⁵](#) or [Firefox⁶](#). While Chrome and Safari already come with built-in Developer Tools, you’ll need the [Firebug⁷](#) plug-in for Firefox.

²<http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/WebKit>

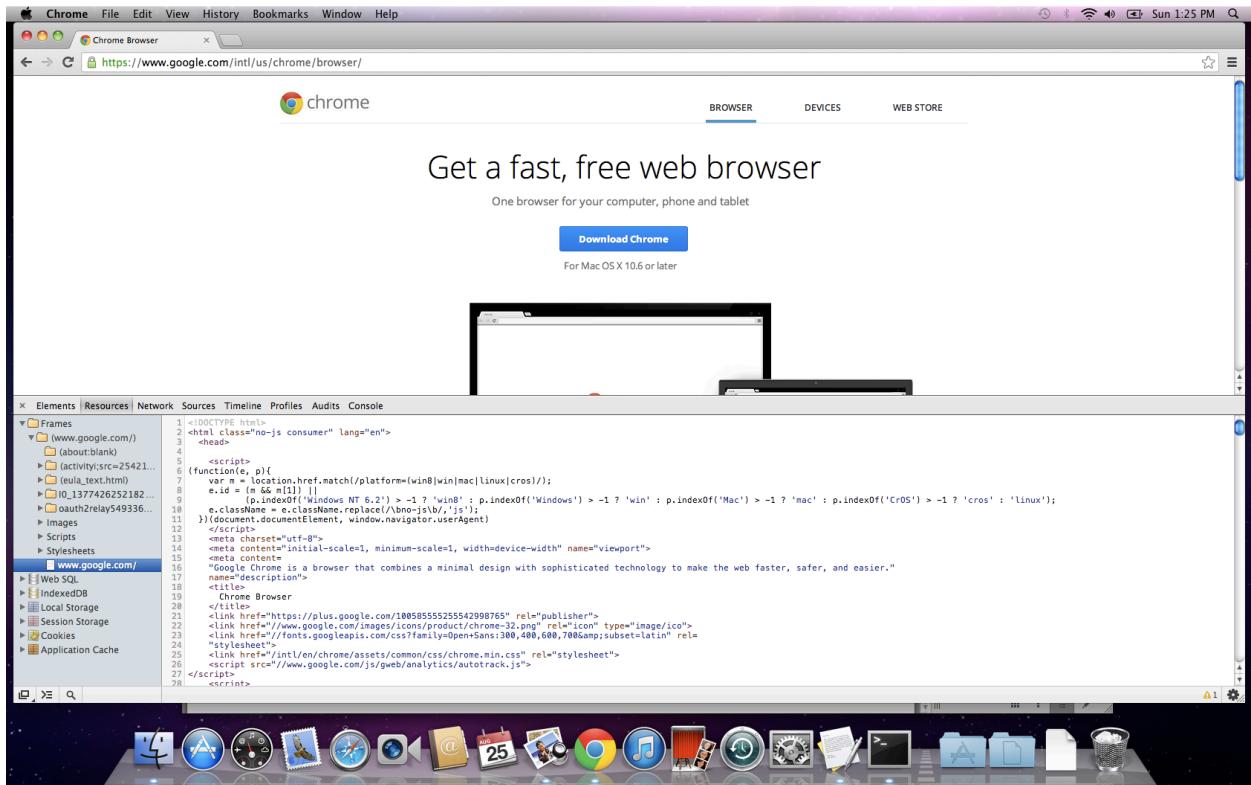
³[http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Gecko_\(layout_engine\)](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Gecko_(layout_engine))

⁴<http://www.google.com/chrome>

⁵<http://www.apple.com/safari/>

⁶<http://www.mozilla.org/en-US/firefox/new/>

⁷<http://getfirebug.com/>



Chrome dev tools.

Firebug and Developer Tools allow developers to do many things like:

- Debug JavaScript
- Manipulate HTML and DOM elements
- Modify CSS on the fly
- Monitor HTTP requests and responses
- Run profiles and inspect heap dumps
- See loaded assets such as images, CSS and JS files

The screenshot shows the Google Developers website with the URL <https://developers.google.com/chrome-developer-tools/>. The page title is "Chrome DevTools". The main content area features a large image of a laptop displaying the Chrome DevTools interface, with the text "Debug the Web." and "Inspect, debug and optimize Web applications." Below the image is a "Start now" button. To the left, there's a sidebar with a list of topics under "Authoring and Development Workflow" and other sections like "Settings" and "Contributing". The right side has a "Feedback on this document" link and a "Sign in" button.

Google tutorials for mastering web deb tools.

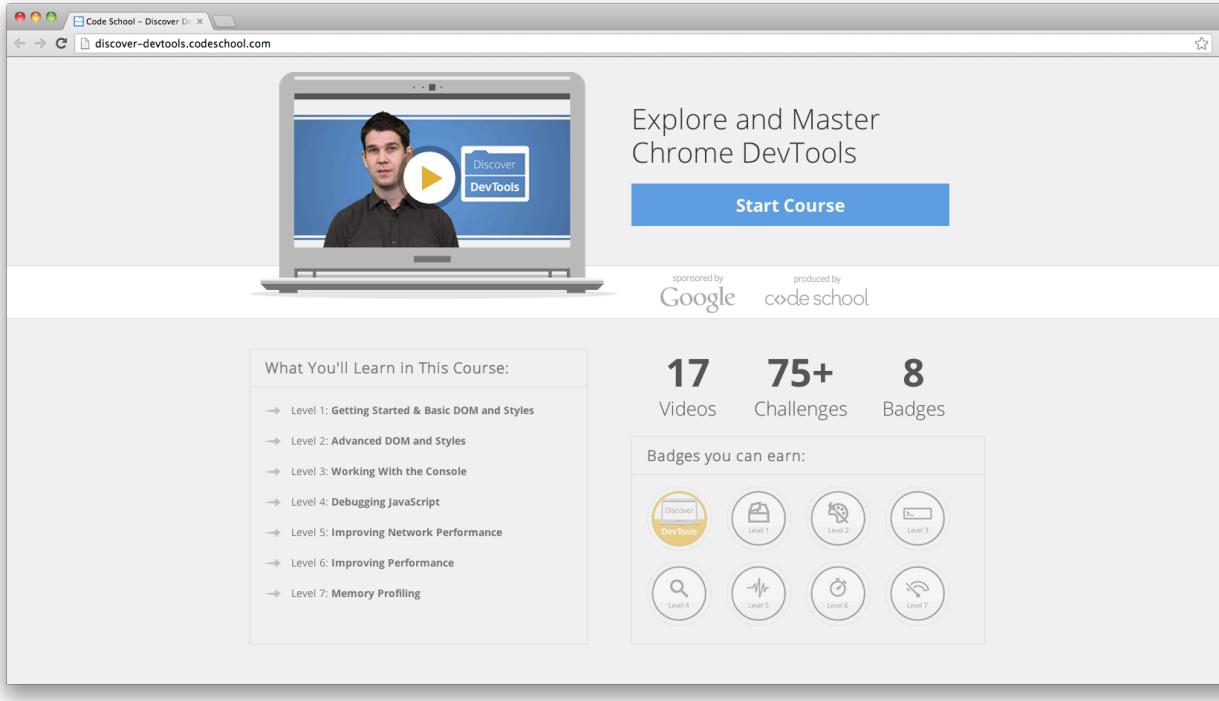
Great Chrome DevTools tutorials:

- [Explore and Master Chrome DevTools⁸](#) with Code School
- [Chrome DevTools videos⁹](#)
- [Chrome DevTools overview¹⁰](#)

⁸<http://discover-devtools.codeschool.com/>

⁹<https://developers.google.com/chrome-developer-tools/docs/videos>

¹⁰<https://developers.google.com/chrome-developer-tools/>



Mastering chrome DevTools.

2.1.3 IDEs and Text Editors

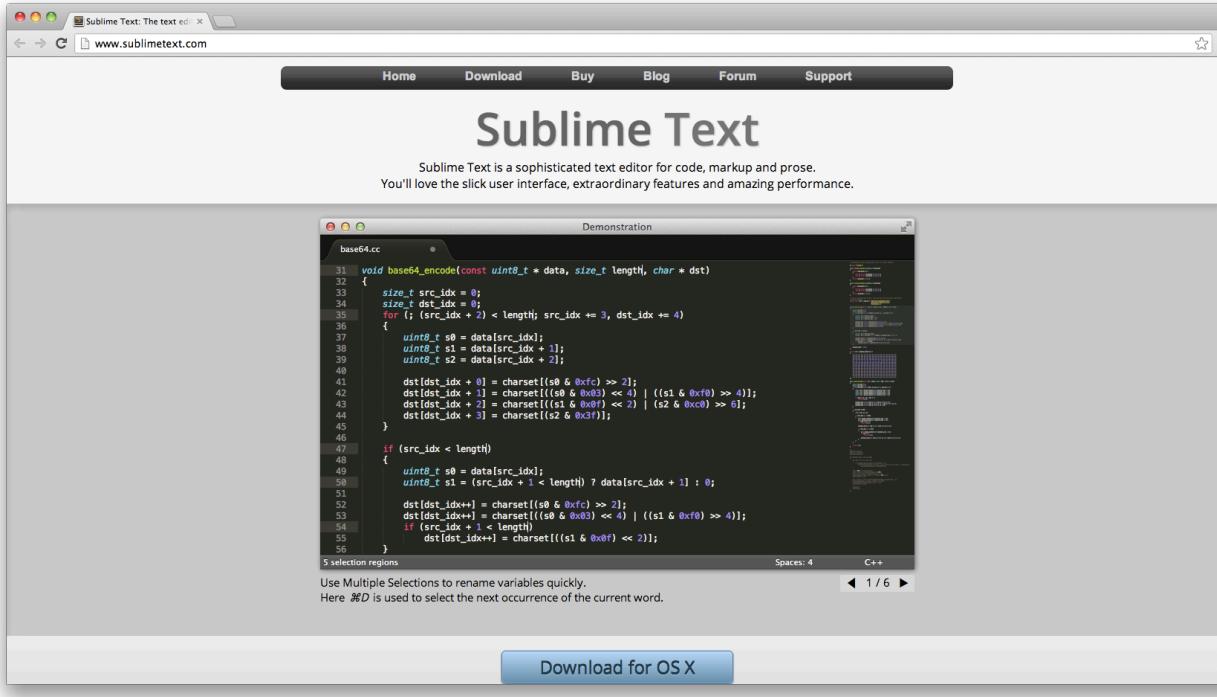
One of the best things about JavaScript is that you don't need to compile the code. Because JS lives in and is run in a browser, you can do debugging right there, in a browser! Therefore, we highly recommend a lightweight text editor vs. a full-blown integrated development environment¹¹, or IDE, but if you are already familiar and comfortable with the IDE of your choice like Eclipse¹², NetBeans¹³ or Aptana¹⁴, feel free to stick with it.

¹¹http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Integrated_development_environment

¹²<http://www.eclipse.org/>

¹³<http://netbeans.org/>

¹⁴<http://aptana.com/>



Sublime Text code editor home page.

Here is the list of the most popular text editors and IDEs used in web development:

- [TextMate¹⁵](http://macromates.com/): Mac OS X version only, free 30-day trial for v1.5, dubbed *The Missing Editor for Mac OS X*.
- [Sublime Text¹⁶](http://www.sublimetext.com/): Mac OS X and Windows versions are available, even better alternative to TextMate, unlimited evaluation period.
- [Coda¹⁷](http://panic.com/coda/): all-in-one editor with FTP browser and preview, has support for development with/on an iPad.
- [Aptana Studio¹⁸](http://aptana.com/): full-sized IDE with a built-in terminal and many other tools.
- [Notepad ++¹⁹](http://notepad-plus-plus.org/): free Windows-only lightweight text editor with the support of many languages.
- [WebStorm IDE²⁰](http://www.jetbrains.com/webstorm/): feature-rich IDE which allows for Node.js debugging; it's developed by JetBrains and marketed as *the smartest JavaScript IDE*.

¹⁵<http://macromates.com/>

¹⁶<http://www.sublimetext.com/>

¹⁷<http://panic.com/coda/>

¹⁸<http://aptana.com/>

¹⁹<http://notepad-plus-plus.org/>

²⁰<http://www.jetbrains.com/webstorm/>



WebStorm IDE home page.

2.1.4 Version Control Systems

Version control system²¹ is a must-have even in an only-one-developer situation. Also many cloud services, e.g., Heroku, require Git for deployment. We also highly recommend getting used to Git and Git terminal commands instead of using Git visual clients/apps with a graphical user interface: GitX²², Gitbox²³ or GitHub for Mac²⁴.

Subversion is a non-distributed version control system. This article compares [Git vs. Subversion](#)²⁵.

Here are the steps to install and set up Git on your machine:

1. Download the latest version for your OS at <http://git-scm.com/downloads>.

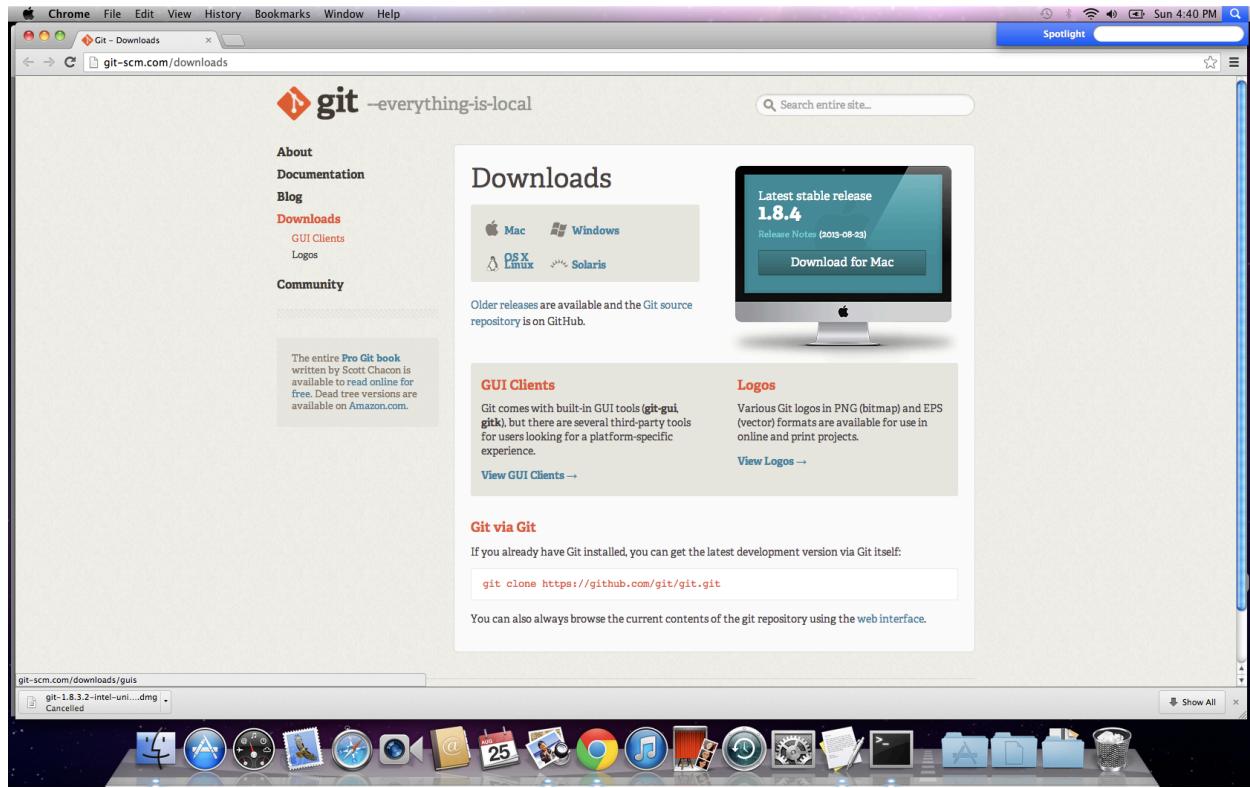
²¹http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Revision_control

²²<http://gitx.frim.nl/>

²³<http://www.gitboxapp.com/>

²⁴<http://mac.github.com/>

²⁵<https://git.wiki.kernel.org/index.php/GitSvnComparison>

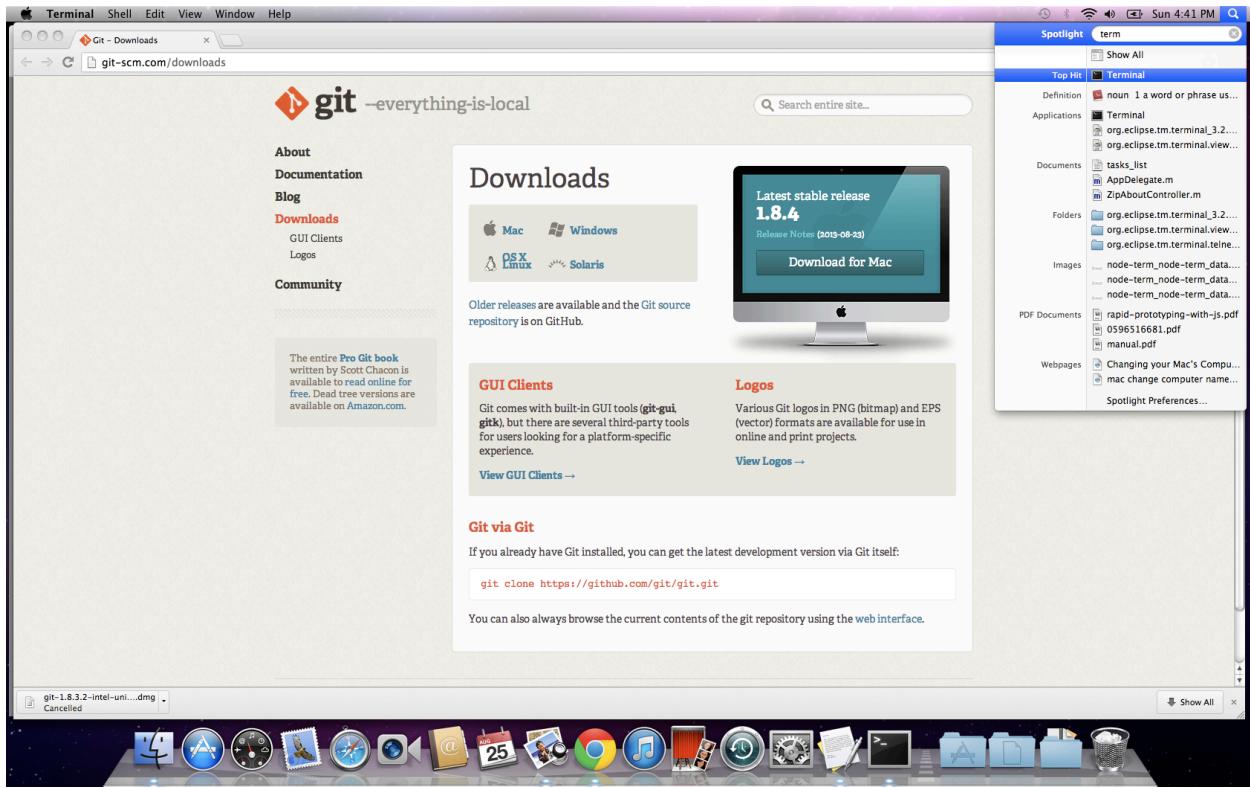


Downloading latest release of Git.

2. Install Git from the downloaded *.dmg package, i.e., run *.pkg file and follow the wizard.
3. Find the terminal app by using Command + Space, a.k.a. Spotlight (please see the screenshot below), on OS X. For Windows you could use [PuTTY](#)²⁶ or [Cygwin](#)²⁷.

²⁶<http://www.chiark.greenend.org.uk/~sgtatham/putty/>

²⁷<http://www.cygwin.com/>



Using Spotlight to find and run an application.

4. In your terminal, type these commands, substituting “John Doe” and johndoe@example.com with your name and email:

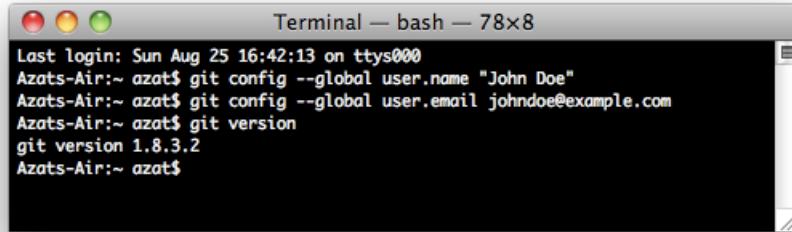
```
1 $ git config --global user.name "John Doe"
2 $ git config --global user.email johndoe@example.com
```

5. To check the installation, run command:

```
1 $ git version
```

6. You should see something like this in your terminal window (your version might vary; in our case it's 1.8.3.2):

```
1 git version 1.8.3.2
```



```
Terminal — bash — 78x8
Last login: Sun Aug 25 16:42:13 on ttys000
Azats-Air:~ azat$ git config --global user.name "John Doe"
Azats-Air:~ azat$ git config --global user.email johndoe@example.com
Azats-Air:~ azat$ git version
git version 1.8.3.2
Azats-Air:~ azat$
```

Configuring & Testing Git installation.

Generation of SSH keys and uploading them to SaaS/PaaS websites will be covered later.

2.1.5 Local HTTP Servers

While you can do most of the front-end development without a local HTTP server, it is needed for loading files with HTTP Requests/AJAX calls. Also, it's just a good practice in general to use a local HTTP server. This way, your development environment is as close to the production environment as possible. You might want to consider the following modifications of the Apache web server:

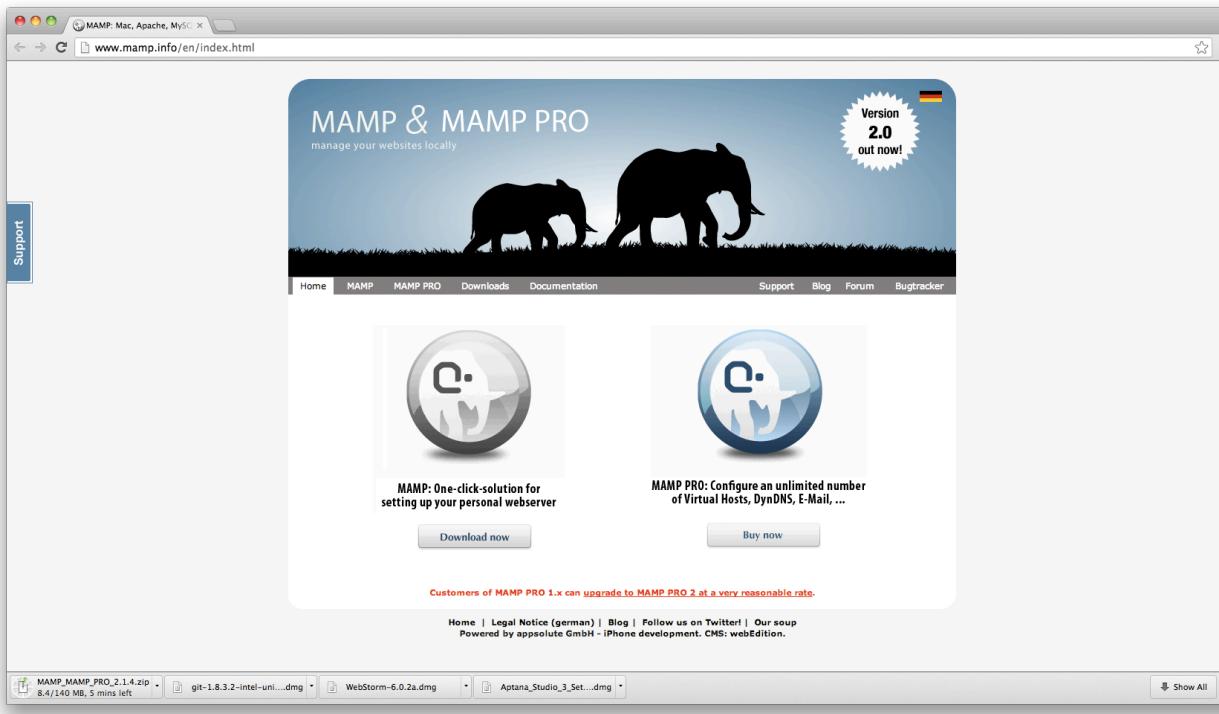
- [MAMP²⁸](#): Mac, Apache, MySQL, PHP personal web server for Mac OS X
- [MAMP Stack²⁹](#): Mac app with PHP, Apache, MySQL and phpMyAdmin stack build by BitNami ([Apple app store³⁰](#))
- [XAMPP³¹](#): Apache distribution containing MySQL, PHP and Perl for Windows, Mac, Linux and Solaris.

²⁸<http://www.mamp.info/en/index.html>

²⁹<http://bitnami.com/stack/mamp>

³⁰<https://itunes.apple.com/es/app/mamp-stack/id571310406?l=en>

³¹<http://www.apachefriends.org/en/xampp.html>



MAMP for Mac home page.

MAMP, MAMP Stack and XAMPP have intuitive Graphical User Interfaces (GUIs) which allow you to change configurations and host file settings.



Note

Node.js as many other back-end technologies have their own servers for development.

2.1.6 Database: MongoDB

The following steps are better suited for Max OS X/Linux based systems but with some modification can be used for Windows systems as well, i.e., \$PATH variable - step #3. Below, we describe the MongoDB installation from the official package, because we found that this approach is more robust and leads to less conflicts. However, there are many [other ways to install it on Mac³²](#), for example using Brew, as well as on [other systems³³](#).

1. MongoDB can be downloaded at <http://www.mongodb.org/downloads>. For the latest Apple laptops, like MacBook Air, select OS X 64-bit version. The owners of older Macs should browse the link <http://dl.mongodb.org/dl/osx/i386>.

³²<http://docs.mongodb.org/manual/tutorial/install-mongodb-on-os-x/>

³³<http://docs.mongodb.org/manual/installation/>



Tip

To figure out the architecture type of your processor, type the `$ uname -p` in the command line.

1. Unpack the package into your web development folder (`~/Documents/Development` or any other). If you want, you could install MongoDB into `/usr/local/mongodb` folder.
2. **Optional:** If you would like to access MongoDB commands from anywhere on your system, you need to add your `mongodb` path to the `$PATH` variable. For Mac OS X the open system `paths` file with:

```
1 sudo vi /etc/paths
```

or, if you prefer TextMate:

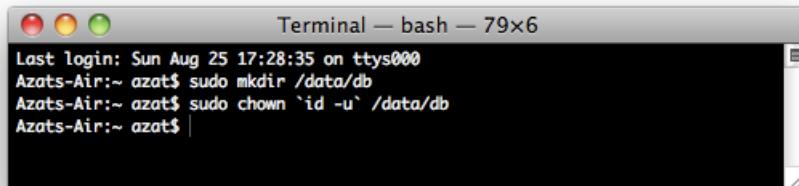
```
1 mate /etc/paths
```

And add this line to the `/etc/paths` file:

```
1 /usr/local/mongodb/bin
```

3. Create a data folder; by default, MongoDB uses `/data/db`. Please note that this might be different in a new versions of MongoDB. To create it, type and execute the following commands in the terminal:

```
1 $ sudo mkdir -p /data/db
2 $ sudo chown `id -u` /data/db
```

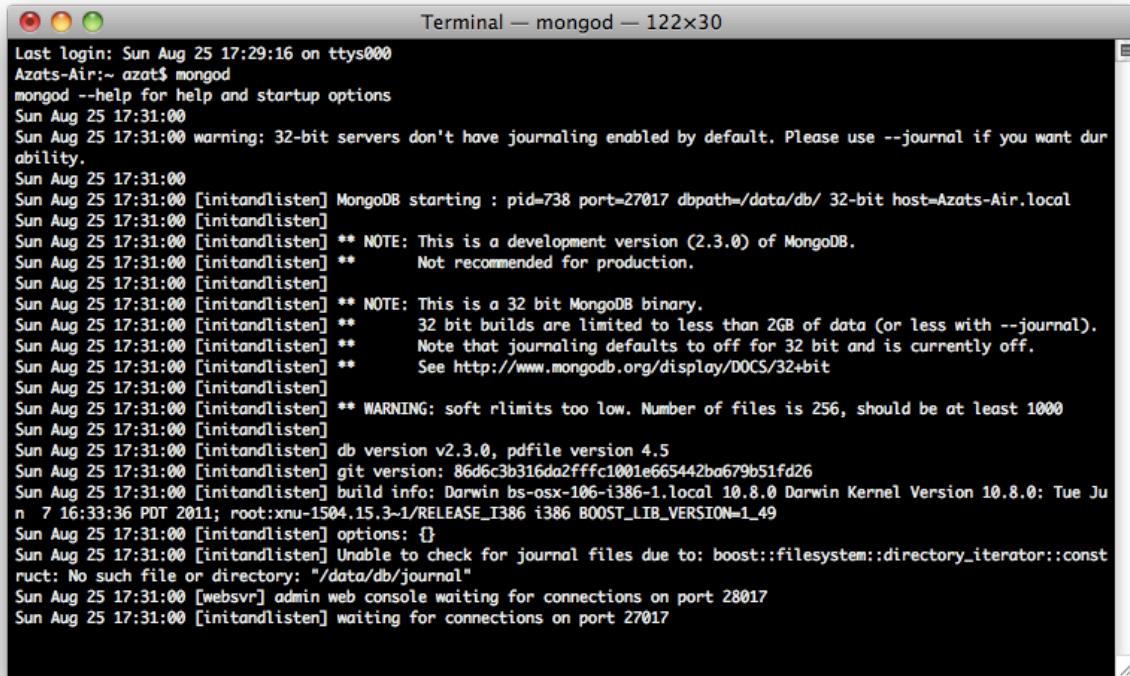


Initial setup for MongoDB: create the data directory.

If you prefer to use path other than `/data/db` you could specify it using the `-dbpath` option to `mongod` (main MongoDB service).

4. Go to the folder where you unpacked MongoDB. That location should have a `bin` folder in it. From there, type the following command in your terminal:

```
1 $ ./bin/mongod
```



```
Last login: Sun Aug 25 17:29:16 on ttys000
Azats-Air:~ azat$ mongod
mongod --help for help and startup options
Sun Aug 25 17:31:00
Sun Aug 25 17:31:00 warning: 32-bit servers don't have journaling enabled by default. Please use --journal if you want durability.
Sun Aug 25 17:31:00
Sun Aug 25 17:31:00 [initandlisten] MongoDB starting : pid=738 port=27017 dbpath=/data/db/ 32-bit host=Azats-Air.local
Sun Aug 25 17:31:00 [initandlisten]
Sun Aug 25 17:31:00 [initandlisten] ** NOTE: This is a development version (2.3.0) of MongoDB.
Sun Aug 25 17:31:00 [initandlisten] ** Not recommended for production.
Sun Aug 25 17:31:00 [initandlisten]
Sun Aug 25 17:31:00 [initandlisten] ** NOTE: This is a 32 bit MongoDB binary.
Sun Aug 25 17:31:00 [initandlisten] ** 32 bit builds are limited to less than 2GB of data (or less with --journal).
Sun Aug 25 17:31:00 [initandlisten] ** Note that journaling defaults to off for 32 bit and is currently off.
Sun Aug 25 17:31:00 [initandlisten] ** See http://www.mongodb.org/display/DOCS/32+bit
Sun Aug 25 17:31:00 [initandlisten]
Sun Aug 25 17:31:00 [initandlisten] ** WARNING: soft rlimits too low. Number of files is 256, should be at least 1000
Sun Aug 25 17:31:00 [initandlisten]
Sun Aug 25 17:31:00 [initandlisten] db version v2.3.0, pdfile version 4.5
Sun Aug 25 17:31:00 [initandlisten] git version: 86d6c3b316dd2fffc1001e665442ba679b51fd26
Sun Aug 25 17:31:00 [initandlisten] build info: Darwin bs-osx-106-i386-1.local 10.8.0 Darwin Kernel Version 10.8.0: Tue Jun 7 16:33:36 PDT 2011; root:xnu-1504.15.3~1/RELEASE_I386 i386 BOOST_LIB_VERSION=1_49
Sun Aug 25 17:31:00 [initandlisten] options: {}
Sun Aug 25 17:31:00 [initandlisten] Unable to check for journal files due to: boost::filesystem::directory_iterator::construct: No such file or directory: "/data/db/journal"
Sun Aug 25 17:31:00 [websvr] admin web console waiting for connections on port 28017
Sun Aug 25 17:31:00 [initandlisten] waiting for connections on port 27017
```

Starting-up the MongoDB server.

5. If you see something like

```
1 MongoDB starting: pid =7218 port=27017...
```

it means that the MongoDB database server is running. By default, it's listening at <http://localhost:27017>. If you go to your browser and type <http://localhost:28017> you should be able to see the version number, logs and other useful information. In this case MondoDB server is using **two** different ports (27017 and 28017): one is primary (native) for the communications with apps and the other is web based GUI for monitoring/statistics. In our Node.js code we'll be using only 27017.



Note

Don't forget to restart the Terminal window after adding a new path to the \$PATH variable.

Now, to take it even further, we can test to determine if we have access to the MongoDB console/shell, which will act as a client to this server. This means that we'll have to keep the terminal window with the server open and running.

1. Open another terminal window at the same folder and execute:

```
1 $ ./bin/mongo
```

You should be able to see something like “MongoDB shell version 2.0.6 ...”

2. Then type and execute:

```
1 > db.test.save( { a: 1 } )
2 > db.test.find()
```

If you see that your record is being saved, then everything went well:

```
Last login: Sun Aug 25 17:30:33 on ttys000
Azats-Air:~ azat$ mongo
MongoDB shell version: 2.3.0
connecting to: test
Welcome to the MongoDB shell.
For interactive help, type "help".
For more comprehensive documentation, see
    http://docs.mongodb.org/
Questions? Try the support group
    http://groups.google.com/group/mongodb-user
> db.test.save( { a: 1 } )
> db.test.find()
{ "_id" : ObjectId("521a169d6421d0d4d6f3190f"), "a" : 1 }
>
```

Running MongoDB client and storing sample data.

Commands *find* and *save* do exactly what you might think they do. ;-)

Detailed instructions are also available at MongoDB.org: [Install MongoDB on OS X³⁴](#). For Windows, users there is a good walk-through article: [Installing MongoDB³⁵](#).



Note

MAMP and XAMPP applications come with MySQL — open-source traditional SQL database, and phpMyAdmin — web interface for MySQL database.



Note

On Max OS X (and most Unix systems), to close the process use **control + c**. If you use **control + z** it will put the process to sleep (or detach the terminal window); in this case, you might end up with the lock on data files and will have to use the **kill** command or Activity Monitor, and manually delete the locked file in the data folder. In vanilla Mac Terminal **command + .** is an alternative to **control + c**.

³⁴<http://docs.mongodb.org/manual/tutorial/install-mongodb-on-os-x/>

³⁵<http://www.tuanlead.com/blog/2011/10/installing-mongodb/>

2.1.7 Other Components

2.1.7.1 Node.js Installation

Node.js is available at <http://nodejs.org/#download> (please see the screenshot below). The installation is trivial, i.e., download the archive, run the *.pkg package installer. To check the installation of Node.js you could type and execute:

```
1 $ node -v
```

It should show something similar to this (we use v0.8.1, but your version might vary):

```
1 v0.8.1
```

Node.js package already includes [Node Package Manager³⁶](#) (NPM). We'll use NPM extensively to install Node.js modules.



Node.js home page.

2.1.7.2 JS Libraries

Front-end JavaScript libraries are downloaded and unpacked from their respective websites. Those files are usually put in Development folder (e.g., `~/Documents/Development`) for future use. Oftentimes, there is a

³⁶<https://npmjs.org>

choice between minified production version (more on that in AMD and Require.js section of the *Intro to Backbone.js* chapter) and extensively rich in comments development one.

Another approach is to hot-link these scripts from CDNs such as [Google Hosted Libraries³⁷](#), [CDNJS³⁸](#), [Microsoft Ajax Content Delivery Network³⁹](#) and others. By doing so the apps will be faster for some users, but won't work locally at all without the Internet.

- LESS as a front-end interpreter is available at [lesscss.org⁴⁰](#) — you could unpack it into your development folder (*~/Documents/Development*) or any other.
- Twitter Bootstrap is a CSS/LESS framework. It's available at [twitter.github.com/bootstrap⁴¹](#).
- jQuery is available at [jquery.com⁴²](#).
- Backbone.js is available at [backbonejs.org⁴³](#).
- Underscore.js is available at [underscorejs.org⁴⁴](#).
- Require.js is available at [requirejs.org⁴⁵](#).

2.1.7.3 LESS App

The LESS App is a Mac OS X application for “on-the-fly” compilation of LESS to CSS. It's available at [incident57.com/less⁴⁶](#).

³⁷<https://developers.google.com/speed/libraries/devguide>

³⁸<http://cdnjs.com/>

³⁹<http://www.asp.net/ajaxlibrary/cdn.ashx>

⁴⁰<http://lesscss.org/>

⁴¹<http://twitter.github.com/bootstrap/>

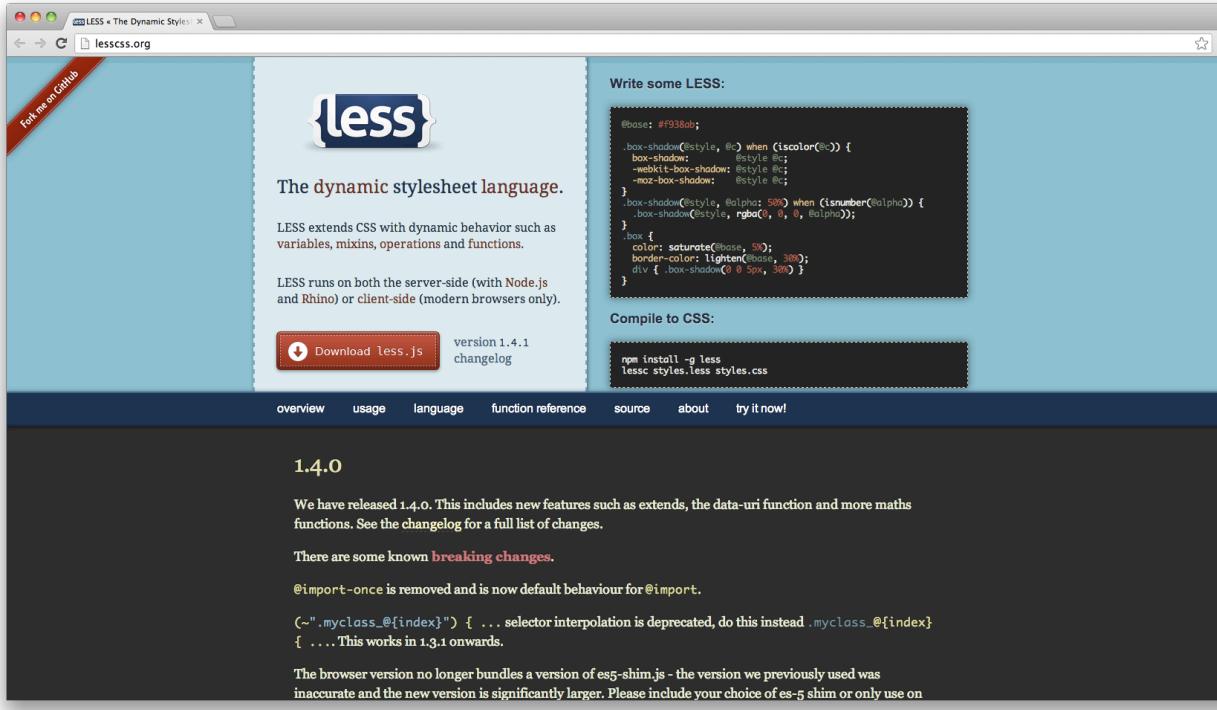
⁴²<http://jquery.com>

⁴³<http://backbonejs.org>

⁴⁴<http://underscorejs.org>

⁴⁵<http://requirejs.org>

⁴⁶<http://incident57.com/less/>



LESS App for Mac home page.

2.2 Cloud Setup

2.2.1 SSH Keys

SSH keys provide a secure connection without the need to enter username and password every time. For GitHub repositories, the latter approach is used with HTTPS URLs, e.g., `https://github.com/azat-co/rpjs.git`, and the former with SSH URLs, e.g., `git@github.com:azat-co/rpjs.git`.

To generate SSH keys for GitHub on Mac OS X/Unix machines do the following:

1. Check for existing SSH keys

```
1 $ cd ~/.ssh
2 $ ls -lah
```

2. If you see some files like `id_rsa` (please refer to the screenshot below for an example), you could delete them or backup into a separate folder by using following commands:

```

1 $ mkdir key_backup
2 $ cp id_rsa* key_backup
3 $ rm id_rsa*

```

3. Now we can generate a new SSH key pair using the **ssh-keygen** command, assuming we are in `~/ssh` folder:

```
1 $ ssh-keygen -t rsa -C "your_email@youremail.com"
```

4. Answer the questions; it is better to keep the default name: **id_rsa**. Then copy the content of the **id_rsa.pub** file to your clipboard:

```
1 $ pbcopy < ~/.ssh/id_rsa.pub
```

```

Terminal — bash — 105x28
Azats-Air:~ azat$ ssh-keygen -t rsa -C "johny@example.com"
Generating public/private rsa key pair.
Enter file in which to save the key (/Users/azat/.ssh/id_rsa):
Created directory '/Users/azat/.ssh'.
Enter passphrase (empty for no passphrase):
Enter same passphrase again:
Your identification has been saved in /Users/azat/.ssh/id_rsa.
Your public key has been saved in /Users/azat/.ssh/id_rsa.pub.
The key fingerprint is:
df:08:f9:a0:0c:87:ed:e8:38:33:92:11:54:c3:bb:0f johny@example.com
The key's randomart image is:
+--[ RSA 2048]----+
| oo             |
| . ..          |
| . .           |
| . . o         |
| . + o S       |
| . E * . = o   |
| o + + + .     |
| o +o .        |
| ...           |
+-----+
Azats-Air:~ azat$ open id_rsa.pub
The file /Users/azat/id_rsa.pub does not exist.
Azats-Air:~ azat$ open ~/.ssh/id_rsa.pub
No application knows how to open /Users/azat/.ssh/id_rsa.pub.
Azats-Air:~ azat$ pbcopy < ~/.ssh/id_rsa.pub
Azats-Air:~ azat$
```

Generating RSA key for SSH and copying public key to clipboard.

5. Or alternatively, open **id_rsa.pub** file in the default editor:

```
1 $ open id_rsa.pub
```

6. Or in TextMate:

```
1 $ mate id_rsa.pub
```

2.2.2 GitHub

1. After you have copied the public key, go to github.com⁴⁷, log in, go to your account settings, select “SSH key” and add the new SSH key. Assign a name, e.g., the name of your computer, and paste the value of your **public key**.
2. To check if you have an SSH connection to GitHub, type and execute the following command in your terminal:

```
1 $ ssh -T git@github.com
```

If you see something like:

```
1 Hi your-GitHub-username! You've successfully authenticated,
2 but GitHub does not provide shell access.
```

then everything is set up.

3. While the first time connecting to GitHub, you can receive “authenticity of host ... can't be established” warning. Please don't be confused with such a message — just proceed by answering ‘yes’ as shown on the screenshot below.

```
Last login: Sun Aug 25 18:47:31 on ttys000
Azats-Air:~ azat$ ssh -T git@github.com
The authenticity of host 'github.com (204.232.175.90)' can't be established.
RSA key fingerprint is 16:27:ac:a5:76:28:2d:36:63:1b:56:4d:eb:df:a6:48.
Are you sure you want to continue connecting (yes/no)? yes
Warning: Permanently added 'github.com,204.232.175.90' (RSA) to the list of known hosts.
Identity added: /Users/azat/.ssh/id_rsa (/Users/azat/.ssh/id_rsa)
Hi alex-d3v! You've successfully authenticated, but GitHub does not provide shell access.
Azats-Air:~ azat$
```

Testing SSH connection to GitHub for the very first time.

If for some reason you have a different message, please repeat steps 3-4 from the previous section on *SSH Keys* and/or re-upload the content of your *.pub file to GitHub.



Warning

Keep your `id_rsa` file private and don't share it with anybody!

More instructions are available at GitHub: [Generating SSH Keys](#)⁴⁸.

Windows users might find useful the SSH key generator feature in [PuTTY].

⁴⁷<http://github.com>

⁴⁸<https://help.github.com/articles/generating-ssh-keys>

2.2.3 Windows Azure

Here are the steps to set up a Windows Azure account:

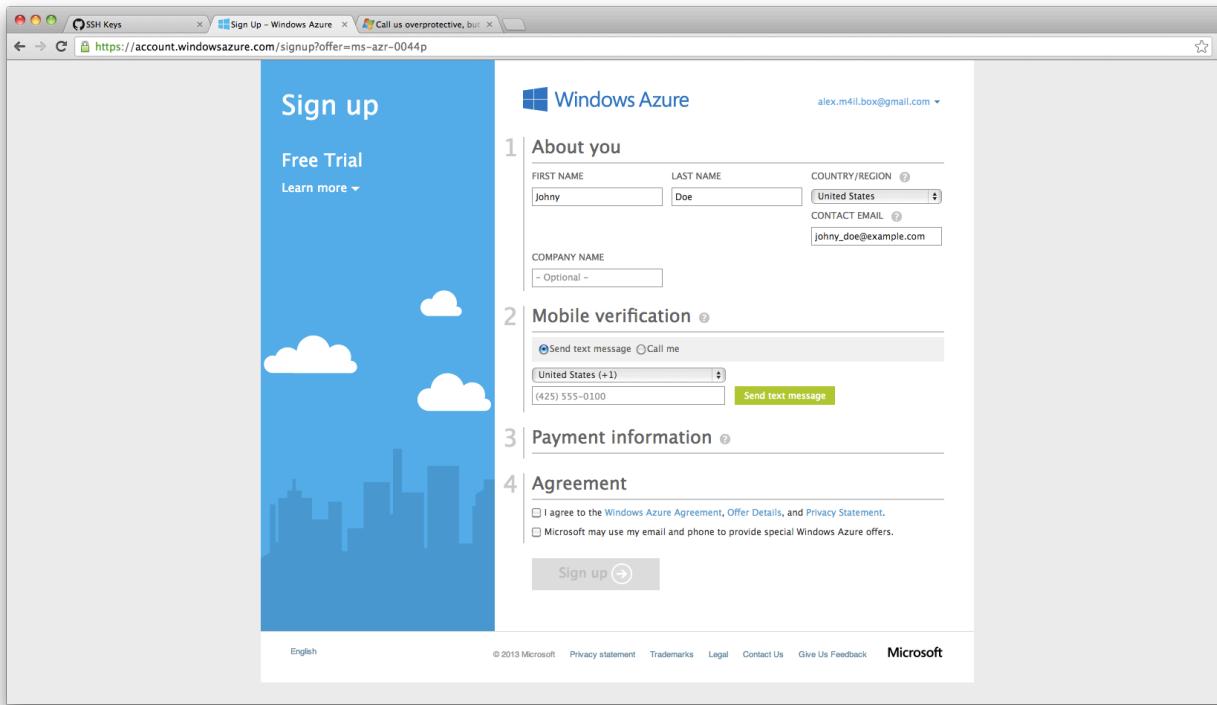
1. You'll need to sign up for Windows Azure Web Site and Virtual Machine previews. Currently they have a 90-day free trial <https://www.windowsazure.com/en-us/>.
2. Enable Git Deployment and create a username and password. Then upload SSH public key to Windows Azure.
3. Install Node.js SDK, which is available at <https://www.windowsazure.com/en-us/develop/nodejs/>.
4. To check your installation type:

```
1 $ azure -v
```

You should be able to see something like:

```
1 Windows Azure: Microsoft's Cloud Platform... Tool Version 0.6.0
```

5. Log in to Windows Azure Portal at <https://windows.azure.com/>.



Registering on Windows Azure.

6. Select “New,” then select “Web Site,” “Quick Create.” Type the name which will serve as the URL for your website, and click “OK.”
7. Go to this newly created Web Site’s Dashboard and select “Set up Git publishing.” Come up with a username and password. This combination can be used to deploy to any web site in your subscription, meaning that you do not need to set credentials for every web site you create. Click “OK.”
8. On the follow-up screen, it should show you the Git URL to push to, something like

```
1 https://azatazure@azat.scm.azurewebsites.net/azat.git
```

and instructions on how to proceed with deployment. We'll cover them later.

9. **Advanced user option:** follow this tutorial to create a virtual machine and install MongoDB on it: [Install MongoDB on a virtual machine running CentOS Linux in Windows Azure⁴⁹](#).

2.2.4 Heroku

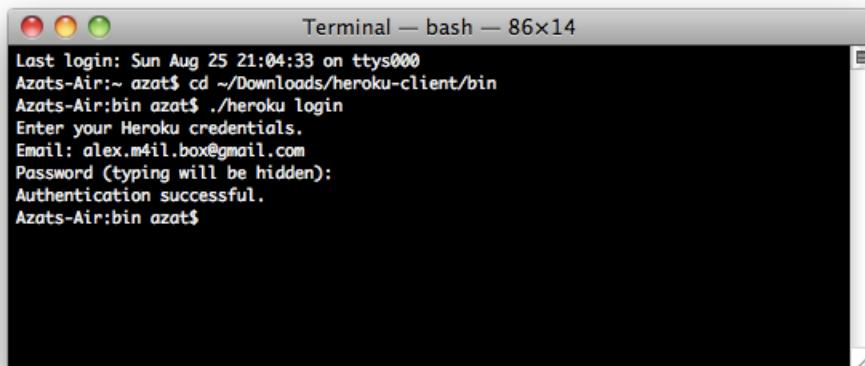
Heroku is a polyglot agile application deployment <http://www.heroku.com/> platform. Heroku works similarly to Windows Azure in the sense that you can use Git to deploy applications. There is no need to install Virtual Machine for MongoDB because Heroku has [MongoHQ add-on⁵⁰](#).

To set up Heroku, follow these steps:

1. Sign up at <http://heroku.com>. Currently they have a free account; to use it, select all options as minimum (0) and database as shared.
2. Download Heroku Toolbelt at <https://toolbelt.heroku.com>. Toolbelt is a package of tools, i.e., libraries which consists of Heroku, Git, and Foreman⁵¹. For users of older Macs get this [client⁵²](#) directly. If you utilize another OS, browse [Heroku Client GitHub⁵³](#).
3. After the installation is done, you should have access to the **heroku** command. To check it and log in to Heroku, type:

```
1 $ heroku login
```

It will ask you for Heroku credentials (username and password), and if you've already created the SSH key, it will automatically upload it to the Heroku website:



The response to the successful `$ heroku login` command.

⁴⁹<https://www.windowsazure.com/en-us/manage/linux/common-tasks/mongodb-on-a-linux-vm/>

⁵⁰<https://addons.heroku.com/mongohq>

⁵¹<https://github.com/ddollar/foreman>

⁵²<http://assets.heroku.com/heroku-client/heroku-client.tgz>

⁵³<https://github.com/heroku/heroku>

4. If everything went well, to create a Heroku application inside of your specific project folder, you should be able to run:

```
1 $ heroku create
```

More detailed step-by-step instructions are available at [Heroku: Quickstart⁵⁴](#) and [Heroku: Node.js⁵⁵](#).

2.2.5 Cloud9

Cloud9 is an in-browser IDE with which, by using your GitHub or BitBucket account, you can browse your repositories, edit them and deploy to Windows Azure or other services. No installations are needed; everything works in the browser, pretty much like Google Docs.

⁵⁴<https://devcenter.heroku.com/articles/quickstart>

⁵⁵<https://devcenter.heroku.com/articles/nodejs>

II Front-End Prototyping

3 jQuery and Parse.com

Summary: overview of main jQuery functions, Twitter Bootstrap scaffolding, main LESS components; definitions of JSON, AJAX and CORS; illustrations of JSONP calls on Twitter REST API example; explanations on how to build Chat front-end only application with jQuery and Parse.com; step-by-step instructions on deployment to Heroku and Windows Azure.

“There are two ways of constructing a software design: One way is to make it so simple that there are obviously no deficiencies, and the other way is to make it so complicated that there are no obvious deficiencies. The first method is far more difficult.” — Tony Hoare¹

3.1 Definitions

3.1.1 JavaScript Object Notation

Here is the definition of JavaScript Object Notation, or JSON, from json.org²:

JavaScript Object Notation, or JSON, is a lightweight data-interchange format. It is easy for humans to read and write. It is easy for machines to parse and generate. It is based on a subset of the JavaScript Programming Language, [Standard ECMA-262 3rd Edition - December 1999](#)³. JSON is a text format that is completely language independent but uses conventions that are familiar to programmers of the C-family of languages, including C, C++, C#, Java, JavaScript, Perl, Python, and many others. These properties make JSON an ideal data-interchange language.

JSON has become a standard for transferring data between different components of web/mobile applications and third-party services. JSON is also widely used inside the applications as a format for configuration, locales, translation files or any other data.

Typical JSON object looks like this:

```
1  {
2    "a": "value of a",
3    "b": "value of b"
4 }
```

¹http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Charles_Antony_Richard_Hoare

²<http://www.json.org/>

³<http://www.ecma-international.org/publications/files/ECMA-ST/Ecma-262.pdf>

We have an object with key-value pairs. Keys are on the left and values are on the right side of colons (:). In Computer Science terminology, JSON is equivalent to a hash table, a keyed list or an associative array (depending on a particular language). The only big difference between JSON and JS object literal notation (native JS objects) is that the former is more stringent and requires double quotes ("") for key identifiers and string values. Both types can be serialized into a string representation with `JSON.stringify()` and deserialized with `JSON.parse()` assuming we have a valid JSON object in a string format.

However, every member of an object can be an array, primitive, or another object; for example:

```

1  {
2      "posts": [
3          {
4              "title": "Get your mind in shape!",
5              "votes": 9,
6              "comments": ["nice!", "good link"]
7          },
8          {
9              "title": "Yet another post",
10             "votes": 0,
11             "comments": []
12         }
13     ],
14     "totalPost": 2,
15     "getData": function () {
16         return new Data().getDate();
17     }
18 }
```

In the above example, we have an object with the `posts` property. The value of the `posts` property is an array of objects with each one of them having `title`, `votes` and `comments` keys. The `votes` property holds a number primitive, while `comments` is an array of strings. We also can have function as values; in this case, key is called a method, i.e., `getData`.

JSON is much more flexible and compact than XML or other data formats as outlined in this article – [JSON: The Fat-Free Alternative to XML⁴](#). Conveniently, MongoDB uses a JSON-like format called [BSON⁵](#), or Binary JSON. More on BSON later in the *Node.js and MongoDB* chapter.

3.1.2 AJAX

AJAX stands for Asynchronous JavaScript and XML, and is used on a client-side (browser) to send and receive data from the server by utilizing an `XMLHttpRequest` object in JavaScript language. Despite the name, the use of XML is not required, and JSON is often used instead. That's why developers almost never say AJAX anymore. Keep in mind that HTTP requests could be made synchronously, but it's not a good practice to do so. The most typical example of a sync request would be the `script` tag inclusion.

⁴<http://www.json.org/xml.html>

⁵<http://bsonspec.org/>

3.1.3 Cross-Domain Calls

For security reasons, the initial implementation of a XMLHttpRequest object did not allow for cross-domain calls, i.e., when a client-side code and a server-side one are on different domains. There are methods to work around this issue.

One of them is to use [JSONP](#)⁶ — JSON with padding/prefix. It's basically a dynamically, via DOM manipulation, generated script tag. Script tags don't fall into the same domain limitation. The JSONP request includes a name of a callback function in a request query string. For example, the `jQuery.ajax()` function automatically generates a unique function name and appends it to the request (which is a one string broken into multiple lines for readability):

```
1 https://graph.facebook.com/search  
2 ?type=post  
3 &limit=20  
4 &q=Gatsby  
5 &callback=jQuery16207184716751798987_1368412972614_=1368412984735
```

The second approach is to use Cross-Origin Resource Sharing, or [CORS](#)⁷, which is a better solution but it requires control over the server-side to modify response headers. We'll use this technique in the final version of the Chat example application.

Example of CORS server response header:

```
1 Access-Control-Allow-Origin: *
```

More about CORS: [Resources by Enable CORS](#)⁸ and [Using CORS by HTML5 Rocks Tutorials] (<http://www.html5rocks.com/en/>). Test CORS requests at test-cors.org⁹.

3.2 jQuery

During the training we'll be using jQuery (<http://jquery.com/>) for DOM manipulations, HTTP Requests and JSONP calls. jQuery became a de facto standard because of its \$ object/function, which provides a simple yet efficient way to access any HTML DOM element on a page by its ID, class, tag name, attribute value, structure or by any combination of thereof. The syntax is very similar to CSS, where we use # for id and . for class selection, e.g.:

⁶<http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/JSONP>

⁷<http://www.w3.org/TR/cors/>

⁸<http://enable-cors.org/resources.html>

⁹<http://client.cors-api.appspot.com/client>

```

1  $("#main").hide();
2  $("p.large").attr("style", "color:red");
3  $("#main").show().html("<div>new div</div>");

```

Here is the list of most commonly used jQuery API functions:

- **find()**¹⁰: Selects elements based on the provided selector string
- **hide()**¹¹: Hides an element if it was visible
- **show()**¹²: Shows an element if it was hidden
- **html()**¹³: Gets or sets an inner HTML of an element
- **append()**¹⁴ Injects an element into the DOM after the selected element
- **prepend()**¹⁵ Injects an element into the DOM before the selected element
- **on()**¹⁶: Attaches an event listener to an element
- **off()**¹⁷ Detaches an event listener from an element
- **css()**¹⁸: Gets or sets the style attribute value of an element
- **attr()**¹⁹ Gets or sets any attribute of an element
- **val()**²⁰: Gets or sets the value attribute of an element
- **text()**²¹: Gets the combined text of an element and its children
- **each()**²²: Iterates over a set of matched elements

Most jQuery functions act not only on a single element, on which they are called, but on a set of matched elements if the result of selection has multiples items. This is a common pitfall that leads to bugs, and it usually happens when a jQuery selector is too broad.

Also, jQuery has many plug-ins and libraries, e.g., [jQuery UI](#)²³, [jQuery Mobile](#)²⁴, which provide a rich user interface or other functionality.

3.3 Twitter Bootstrap

[Twitter Bootstrap](#)²⁵ is a collection of CSS/LESS rules and JavaScript plug-ins for creating good User Interface and User Experience without spending *a lot of time* on such details as round-edge buttons, cross-compatibility,

¹⁰<http://api.jquery.com/find>

¹¹<http://api.jquery.com/hide>

¹²<http://api.jquery.com/show>

¹³<http://api.jquery.com/html>

¹⁴<http://api.jquery.com/append>

¹⁵<http://api.jquery.com/prepend>

¹⁶<http://api.jquery.com/on>

¹⁷<http://api.jquery.com/off>

¹⁸<http://api.jquery.com/css>

¹⁹<http://api.jquery.com/attr>

²⁰<http://api.jquery.com/val>

²¹<http://api.jquery.com/text>

²²<http://api.jquery.com/each>

²³<http://jqueryui.com/>

²⁴<http://jquerymobile.com/>

²⁵<http://twitter.github.com/bootstrap/>

responsiveness, etc. This collection or framework is perfect for rapid prototyping of your ideas. Nevertheless, due to its ability to be customized, Twitter Bootstrap is also a good foundation for serious projects. The source code is written in LESS²⁶, but plain CSS could be downloaded and used as well.

Here is a simple example of using Twitter Bootstrap scaffolding. The structure of the project should look like this:

```

1  /bootstrap
2    -index.html
3  /css
4    -bootstrap.min.css
5    ... (other files if needed)
6  /img
7    glyphicons-halflings.png
8    ... (other files if needed)
```

First let's create the **index.html** file with proper tags:

```

1 <!DOCTYPE html>
2 <html lang="en">
3   <head>
4
5   </head>
6   <body>
7   </body>
8 </html>
```

Include Twitter Bootstrap library as a minified CSS file:

```

1 <!DOCTYPE html>
2 <html lang="en">
3   <head>
4     <link
5       type="text/css"
6       rel="stylesheet"
7       href="css/bootstrap.min.css" />
8   </head>
9   <body>
10  </body>
11 </html>
```

Apply scaffolding with container-fluid and row-fluid classes:

²⁶<http://lesscss.org/>

```
1 <body>
2   <div class="container-fluid">
3     <div class="row-fluid">
4       </div> <!-- row-fluid -->
5     </div> <!-- container-fluid -->
6   </body>
```

Twitter Bootstrap uses a 12-column grid. The size of an individual cell could be specified by classes **spanN**, e.g., "span1", "span2", "span12". There are also classes **offsetN**, e.g., "offset1", "offset2", ... "offset12" classes to move cells to the right. A complete reference is available at <http://twitter.github.com/bootstrap/scaffolding.html>.

We'll use **span12** and **hero-unit** classes for the main content block:

```
1   <div class="row-fluid">
2     <div class="span12">
3       <div id="content">
4         <div class="row-fluid">
5           <div class="span12">
6             <div class="hero-unit">
7               <h1>
8                 Welcome to Super
9                 Simple Backbone
10                Starter Kit
11              </h1>
12              <p>
13                This is your home page.
14                To edit it just modify
15                <i>index.html</i> file!
16              </p>
17              <p>
18                <a
19                  class="btn btn-primary btn-large"
20                  href="http://twitter.github.com/bootstrap"
21                  target="_blank">
22                  Learn more
23                </a>
24              </p>
25            </div> <!-- hero-unit -->
26          </div> <!-- span12 -->
27        </div> <!-- row-fluid -->
28      </div> <!-- content -->
29    </div> <!-- span12 -->
30  </div> <!-- row-fluid -->
```

The full source code of the `index.html` from `rpjs/bootstrap`²⁷:

```
1 <!DOCTYPE html>
2 <html lang="en">
3 <head>
4   <link
5     type="text/css"
6     rel="stylesheet"
7     href="css/bootstrap.min.css" />
8 </head>
9 <body >
10  <div class="container-fluid">
11    <div class="row-fluid">
12      <div class="span12">
13        <div id="content">
14          <div class="row-fluid">
15            <div class="span12">
16              <div class="hero-unit">
17                <h1>
18                  Welcome to Super
19                  Simple Backbone
20                  Starter Kit
21                </h1>
22                <p>
23                  This is your home page.
24                  To edit it just modify
25                  <i>index.html</i> file!
26                </p>
27                <p>
28                  <a
29                    class="btn btn-primary btn-large"
30                    href="http://twitter.github.com/bootstrap"
31                    target="_blank">
32                    Learn more
33                  </a>
34                </p>
35              </div> <!-- hero-unit -->
36              </div> <!-- span12 -->
37            </div> <!-- row-fluid -->
38          </div> <!-- content -->
39          </div> <!-- span12 -->
40        </div> <!-- row-fluid -->
41      </div> <!-- container-fluid -->
```

²⁷<https://github.com/azat-co/rpjs/tree/master/bootstrap>

```
42 </body>
43 </html>
```

This example is available for downloading/pulling at GitHub public repository [github.com/azat-co/rpjs²⁸](http://github.com/azat-co/rpjs) under [rpjs/bootstrap folder²⁹](#).

Other useful tools - CSS frameworks and CSS preprocessors worth checking out:

- [Compass³⁰](#): CSS framework
- [SASS³¹](#): extension of CSS3 and analog to LESS
- [Blueprint³²](#): CSS framework
- [Foundation³³](#): responsive front-end framework
- [Bootswatch³⁴](#): collection of customized Twitter Bootstrap themes
- [WrapBootstrap³⁵](#): market place for customized Bootstrap themes

3.4 LESS

LESS is the dynamic stylesheet language. Sometimes, and in this case, it's true that less is more and [more is less³⁶](#). :-)

The browser cannot interpret LESS syntax, so LESS source code must be compiled to CSS in one of the three ways:

1. In the browser by [LESS JavaScript library³⁷](#)
2. On the server-side by language/framework, i.e., for Node.js there is the [LESS module³⁸](#)
3. Locally on your Mac OS X machine by [LESS App³⁹](#), [SimpLESS⁴⁰](#) or a similar app



Warning

Option 1. is okay for a development environment but suboptimal for a production environment.

LESS has variables, mixins and operators, which make it faster for developers to reuse CSS rules. Here is an example of a variable:

²⁸<http://github.com/azat-co/rpjs>

²⁹<https://github.com/azat-co/rpjs/tree/master/bootstrap>

³⁰<http://compass-style.org/>

³¹<http://sass-lang.com/>

³²<http://blueprintcss.org/>

³³<http://foundation.zurb.com/>

³⁴<http://bootswatch.com/>

³⁵<https://wrapbootstrap.com/>

³⁶http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/The_Paradox_of_Choice:_Why_More_Is_Less

³⁷<http://lesscss.googlecode.com/files/less-1.3.0.min.js>

³⁸<https://npmjs.org/package/less>

³⁹<http://incident57.com/less/>

⁴⁰<http://wearekiss.com/simpless>

3.4.1 Variables

Variables reduce redundancy and allow developers to change values fast by having them in one canonical place. And we know that in design (and styling) we often have to change values *very frequently!*

LESS code:

```
1 @color: #4D926F;
2 #header {
3   color: @color;
4 }
5 h2 {
6   color: @color;
7 }
```

Equivalent in CSS:

```
1 #header {
2   color: #4D926F;
3 }
4 h2 {
5   color: #4D926F;
6 }
```

3.4.2 Mixins

This is the syntax for mixin, which acts like a function:

```
1 .rounded-corners (@radius: 5px) {
2   border-radius: @radius;
3   -webkit-border-radius: @radius;
4   -moz-border-radius: @radius;
5 }
6
7 #header {
8   .rounded-corners;
9 }
10 #footer {
11   .rounded-corners(10px);
12 }
```

Converts to this in CSS:

```
1 .rounded-corners (@radius: 5px) {
2   border-radius: @radius;
3   -webkit-border-radius: @radius;
4   -moz-border-radius: @radius;
5 }
6
7 #header {
8   border-radius: 5px;
9   -webkit-border-radius: 5px;
10  -moz-border-radius: 5px;
11 }
12 #footer {
13   border-radius: 10px;
14   -webkit-border-radius: 10px;
15   -moz-border-radius: 10px;
16 }
```

Mixins can be used without parameters, or with multiple parameters.

3.4.3 Operations

With operations, we can perform math functions on numbers, colors or variables.

Example of an operator in LESS:

```
1 @the-border: 1px;
2 @base-color: #111;
3 @red:       #842210;
4
5 #header {
6   color: @base-color * 3;
7   border-left: @the-border;
8   border-right: @the-border * 2;
9 }
10 #footer {
11   color: @base-color + #003300;
12   border-color: desaturate(@red, 10%);
13 }
```

The above code compiles in this CSS:

```

1 @the-border: 1px;
2 @base-color: #111;
3 @red:       #842210;
4
5 #header {
6   color: #333333;
7   border-left: 1px;
8   border-right: 2px;
9 }
10 #footer {
11   color: #114411;
12   border-color: #7d2717;
13 }
```

As you can see, LESS dramatically improves the reusability of plain CSS. Here are some online tools for compilation:

- [LESS2CSS⁴¹](#): slick browser-based LESS to CSS converter built on Express.js
- [lessphp⁴²](#): online demo compiler
- [Dopefly⁴³](#): online LESS converter

Other [LESS features⁴⁴](#) include:

- Pattern-matching
- Nested Rules
- Functions
- Namespaces
- Scope
- Comments
- Importing

3.5 Example of using third-party API (Twitter) and jQuery

The example is for purely demonstrative purposes. It is not a part of the main Chat application covered in later chapters. The goal is to just illustrate the combination of jQuery, JSONP, and REST API technologies. Please take a look through the code and don't attempt to run it, because recently Twitter retired its API v1.0. This application most likely **won't run as-is**. If you still want to run this example do so at your own risk by following the instructions below, downloading it from GitHub or copy-pasting it from the PDF version.

⁴¹<http://less2css.org/>

⁴²<http://leafo.net/lessphp/>

⁴³<http://www.dopefly.com/LESS-Converter/less-converter.html>

⁴⁴<http://lesscss.org/#docs>



Note

This example was built with Twitter API v1.0 and might not work with Twitter API v1.1, which requires user authentication for REST API calls. You can get the necessary keys at dev.twitter.com⁴⁵.

In this example, we'll use jQuery's `$.ajax()` function. It has the following syntax:

```

1 var request = $.ajax({
2     url: url,
3     dataType: "jsonp",
4     data: {page:page, ...},
5     jsonpCallback: "fetchData"+page,
6     type: "GET"
7 });

```

In the code fragment of an `ajax()` function above, we used following parameters:

- `url` is an endpoint of the API
- `dataType` is the type of data we expect from the server, e.g., “json”, “xml”
- `data` is the data to be sent to the server
- `jsonpCallback` is a name of the function, in a string format, to be called after the request comes back
- `type` is HTTP method of the request, e.g., “GET”, “POST”

For more parameters and examples of `ajax()` function, go to api.jquery.com/jQuery.ajax⁴⁶.

To assign our function to a user-triggered event, we need to use the `click` function from the jQuery library. The syntax is very simple:

```

1 $("#btn").click(function() {
2 ...
3 }

```

`$("#btn")` is a jQuery object which points to HTML element in the Document Object Model (DOM) with the `id` of “btn”. An HTML code for the button itself, with Twitter Bootstrap classes applied:

```

1 <input
2   type="button"
3   class="primary btn"
4   id="btn"
5   value="Show words in last 1000 tweets"/>

```

To make sure that all of the elements we want to access/use are in the DOM, we need to enclose *all* of the DOM manipulation code inside of the following jQuery function:

⁴⁵<https://dev.twitter.com>

⁴⁶<http://api.jquery.com/jQuery.ajax/>

```
1 $(document).ready(function(){  
2 ...  
3 })
```



Note

This is a common mistake with dynamically generated HTML elements. They are not available before they have been created and injected into the DOM.

The following one-page application prints the words in a given Twitter user's last 200 tweets sorted by frequency of use.

For example, if @jack had tweeted:

```
1 "hello world"  
2 "hello everyone, and world"  
3 "hi world"
```

The result could be:

```
1 world  
2 hello  
3 and  
4 hi  
5 everyone.
```

The source code is available under the [rpjs/jquery](#)⁴⁷ folder. It's just one file app — **index.html**, and the main JavaScript algorithm implemented this way:

```
1 $(document).ready(function(){
```

We use `document.ready` to postpone execution until the DOM is fully loaded.

```
1 $( '#btn' ).click(function() {
```

This lets us attach the click event listener to an element with the “btn” class.

⁴⁷<https://github.com/azat-co/rpjs/tree/master/jquery>

```

1  var username=$('#username').val();
2  //make ajax call, callback
3  var url =
4      'https://api.twitter.com/1/statuses/user_timeline.json?' +
5      'include_entities=true&include_rts=true&screen_name=' +
6      username + '&count=1000';

```

We instantiate the `username` variable and assign it a value from the input field with the `username id` attribute. On the next line we assign Twitter REST API endpoint URL to a `url` variable. The endpoint responds with tweets from a user's timeline.

```

1  if (username!=''){
2      list = [ ]; //unique global list of words
3      counter = { };
4      var pages = 0;
5      getData(url);
6  }
7  else {
8      alert('Please enter Twitter username')
9  }

```

Checking for an empty `username` to avoid sending a bad request. If `username` is provided, `getData()` will make a request. We use a named function which we will have to define later, in order to prevent the callback from bloating (infamous [pyramid of doom](#)⁴⁸).

```

1      })
2  });

```

Closing click and ready callback constructions/blocks.

```

1  function getData (url) {
2      var request = $.ajax({
3          url: url,
4          dataType: 'jsonp',
5          data: {page:0},
6          jsonpCallback: 'fetchData',
7          type: 'GET'
8      });
9  }

```

The JSONP fetching function that magically (thanks to jQuery) makes cross-domain calls by injecting script tag, and appending the callback function name to the request query string.

We'll use `list` array and `counter` object variables for the algorithm:

⁴⁸<http://tritarget.org/blog/2012/11/28/the-pyramid-of-doom-a-javascript-style-trap/>

```

1  var list = [ ]; //unique global list of words
2  var counter = { }; //number of time each word is repeated

```

The actual function that performs matching and counting:

```

1  function fetchData (m) {
2      for (i = 0; i < m.length; i++) {
3          var words=m[i].text.split(' ');
4          for (j = 0; j < words.length; j++) {
5              words[j] = words[j].replace(/\,/g, '');
6              //some other code ...
7              if (words[j].substring(0,4)!=="http" && words[j]!="") {
8                  if (list.indexOf(words[j])<0) {
9                      list.push(words[j]);
10                     counter[words[j]]=1;
11                 }
12                 else {
13                     //add plus one to word coutner
14                     counter[words[j]]++;
15                 }
16             }
17         }
18     }

```

This code loops through words and uses hash as a lookup table and counter storage.

```

1  for (i=0;i<list.length;i++){
2      var max=counter[list[i]];
3      var p=0;
4      for (j=i;j<list.length;j++) {
5          if (counter[list[i]]<counter[list[j]]) {
6              p=list[i];
7              list[i]=list[j];
8              list[j]=p;
9              maxC=i;
10         }
11     }
12   }

```

The following fragment sorts words (by numbers of repetitions), and prints nicely by injecting output into the DOM:

```

1  var str='';
2  for (i=0;i<list.length;i++){
3      str+=counter[list[i]]+': '+list[i]+'\n';
4  }
5  $('#log').val(str);
6  $('#info').html('Analyzed: ' + list.length+
7      'word(s) form '+m.length +
8      'tweet(s).');
9 }
```

The full code of the **index.html** file:

```

1 $(document).ready(function(){
2     $('#btn').click(function() {
3         //replace loading image
4         var username=$('#username').val();
5         //make ajax call, callback
6         var url =
7             'https://api.twitter.com/1/statuses/user_timeline.json?' +
8             'include_entities=true&include_rts=true&screen_name=' +
9             username + '&count=1000';
10        if (username!=''){
11            list = [ ]; //unique global list of words
12            counter = { };
13            var pages = 0;
14            getData(url);
15        }
16        else {
17            alert('Please enter Twitter username')
18        }
19    })
20 });
21 function getData (url) {
22     var request = $.ajax({
23         url: url,
24         dataType: 'jsonp',
25         data: {page:0},
26         jsonpCallback: 'fetchData',
27         type: 'GET'
28     });
29 }
30 //ajax callback
31 var list = [ ]; //unique global list of words
32 var counter = { };
33 var pages = 0;
```

```

34
35     function fetchData (m) {
36         for (i = 0; i < m.length; i++) {
37             var words=m[i].text.split(' ');
38             for (j = 0; j < words.length; j++) {
39                 words[j] = words[j].replace(/\,/g, '');
40                 ...
41                 if (words[j].substring(0,4)!=="http"&&words[j]!='') {
42                     if (list.indexOf(words[j])<0) {
43                         list.push(words[j]);
44                         counter[words[j]]=1;
45                     }
46                     else {
47                         //add plus one to word couter
48                         counter[words[j]]++;
49                     }
50                 }
51             }
52         }
53         //sort by number of repetitions
54         for (i=0;i<list.length;i++){
55             var max=counter[list[i]];
56             var p=0;
57             for (j=i;j<list.length;j++) {
58                 if (counter[list[i]]<counter[list[j]]) {
59                     p=list[i];
60                     list[i]=list[j];
61                     list[j]=p;
62                     maxC=i;
63                 }
64             }
65         }
66         //print sorted
67         //print nicely with number of repetition
68         var str='';
69         for (i=0; i<list.length; i++){
70             str+=counter[list[i]]+': '+list[i]+'\n';
71         }
72         $('#log').val(str);
73         $('#info').html('Analyzed: ' + list.length+
74             'word(s) form '+m.length+
75             'tweet(s).');
76     }

```

Try launching it and see if it works with or without the local HTTP server. **Hint:** It should not work without

an HTTP server because of its reliance on JSONP technology.



Note

This example was built with Twitter API v1.0 and might not work with Twitter API v1.1, which requires user authentication for REST API calls. You can get the necessary keys at dev.twitter.com⁴⁹. If you feel that there must be a working example please submit your feedback to hi@rpjs.co.

3.6 Parse.com

[Parse.com](http://parse.com)⁵⁰ is a service which can be a substitute for a database and a server. It started as means to support mobile application development. Nevertheless, with REST API and JavaScript SDK, Parse.com can be used in any web, and desktop, applications for data storage (and much more), thus making it ideal for rapid prototyping.

Go to Parse.com and sign up for a free account. Create an application, and copy the Application ID, REST API Key, and JavaScript Key. We'll need these keys to access our collection at Parse.com. Please note the "Data Browser" tab – that's where you can see your collections and items.

We'll create a simple application which will save values to the collections using Parse.com JavaScript SDK. Our application will consist of an **index.html** file and a **app.js** file. Here is the structure of our project folder:

```

1 /parse
2   - index.html
3   - app.js

```

The sample is available at the [rpjs/parse](https://github.com/rpjs/parse)⁵¹ folder on GitHub, but you are encouraged to type your own code from scratch. To start, create the **index.html** file:

```

1 <html lang="en">
2   <head>

```

Include the minified jQuery library from Google CDN:

```

1   <script
2     type="text/javascript"
3     src=
4       "http://ajax.googleapis.com/ajax/libs/jquery/1/jquery.min.js"
5   </script>

```

Include the Parse.com library from Parse CDN location:

⁴⁹<https://dev.twitter.com>

⁵⁰<http://parse.com>

⁵¹<https://github.com/azat-co/rpjs/tree/master/parse>

```
1 <script  
2   src="http://www.parsecdn.com/js/parse-1.0.14.min.js">  
3 </script>
```

Include our `app.js` file:

```
1   <script type="text/javascript" src="app.js"></script>  
2 </head>  
3 <body>  
4 <!-- We'll do something here -->  
5 </body>  
6 </html>
```

Create the `app.js` file and use the `$(document).ready` function to make sure that the DOM is ready for manipulation:

```
1 $(document).ready(function() {
```

Change `parseApplicationId` and `parseJavaScriptKey` to values from the Parse.com application dashboard:

```
1 var parseApplicationId="";  
2 var parseJavaScriptKey="";
```

Since we've included the Parse JavaScript SDK library, we now have access to the global object `Parse`. We initialize a connection with the keys, and create a reference to a `Test` collection:

```
1 Parse.initialize(parseApplicationId, parseJavaScriptKey);  
2 var Test = Parse.Object.extend("Test");  
3 var test = new Test();
```

This simple code will save an object with the keys `name` and `text` to the Parse.com `Test` collection:

```
1 test.save({  
2   name: "John",  
3   text: "hi"}, {
```

Conveniently, the `save()` method accepts the callback parameters `success` and `error` just like the `jQuery.ajax()` function. To get a confirmation, we'll just have to look at the browser console:

```

1   success: function(object) {
2     console.log("Parse.com object is saved: "+object);
3     //alternatively you could use
4     //alert("Parse.com object is saved");
5   },

```

It's important to know why we failed to save an object:

```

1   error: function(object) {
2     console.log("Error! Parse.com object is not saved: "+object);
3   }
4 );
5 })

```

The full source code of **index.html**:

```

1 <html lang="en">
2 <head>
3   <script
4     type="text/javascript"
5     src=
6       "http://ajax.googleapis.com/ajax/libs/jquery/1/jquery.min.js">
7   </script>
8   <script
9     src="http://www.parsecdn.com/js/parse-1.0.14.min.js">
10  </script>
11  <script type="text/javascript" src="app.js"></script>
12 </head>
13 <body>
14 <!-- We'll do something here -->
15 </body>
16 </html>

```

The full source code of the **app.js** file:

```

1 $(document).ready(function() {
2   var parseApplicationId="";
3   var parseJavaSciptKey="";
4   Parse.initialize(parseApplicationId, parseJavaSciptKey);
5   var Test = Parse.Object.extend("Test");
6   var test = new Test();
7   test.save({
8     name: "John",
9     text: "hi"}, {

```

```

10    success: function(object) {
11      console.log("Parse.com object is saved: "+object);
12      //alternatively you could use
13      //alert("Parse.com object is saved");
14    },
15    error: function(object) {
16      console.log("Error! Parse.com object is not saved: "+object);
17    }
18  });
19 })

```



Warning

We need to use the JavaScript SDK Key from the Parse.com dashboard with this approach. For the jQuery example, we'll be using the REST API Key from the same webpage. If you get a 401 Unauthorized error from Parse.com, that's probably because you have a wrong API key.

If everything was done properly, you should be able to see the Test in Parse.com's Data Browser populated with values "John" and "hi". Also, you should see the proper message in your browser's console in Developer Tools. Parse.com automatically creates objectIDs and timestamps, which will be very useful in our Chat application.

Parse.com also has thorough instructions for the 'Hello World' application which are available at the Quick Start Guide sections for [new projects⁵²](#) and [existing ones⁵³](#).

3.7 Chat with Parse.com Overview

The Chat will consist of an input field, a list of messages and a send button. We need to display a list of existing messages and be able to submit new messages. We'll use Parse.com as a back-end for now, and later switch to Node.js with MongoDB.

You can get a free account at Parse.com. The JavaScript Guide is available at https://parse.com/docs/js_guide and JavaScript API is available at <https://parse.com/docs/js/>.

After signing up for Parse.com, go to the dashboard and create a new app if you haven't done so already. Copy your newly created app's Application ID and JavaScript key and REST API Key. We'll need it later. There are a few ways to use [Parse.com⁵⁴](#):

- REST API: We're going to use this approach with the jQuery example
- JavaScript SDK: We just used this approach in our test example above, and we'll use it in the Backbone.js example later

⁵²<https://parse.com/apps/quickstart#js/blank>

⁵³<https://parse.com/apps/quickstart#js/existing>

⁵⁴<http://parse.com>

REST API is a more generic approach. Parse.com provides endpoints which we can request with the `$.ajax()` method from jQuery library. Here is the description of available URLs and methods: [parse.com/docs/rest⁵⁵](https://parse.com/docs/rest).

3.8 Chat with Parse.com: REST API and jQuery version

The full code is available under the [rpjs/rest⁵⁶](#) folder, but we encourage you to try to write your own application first.

We'll use Parse.com's REST API and jQuery. Parse.com supports different origin domain AJAX calls, so we won't need JSONP.



Note

When you decide to deploy your back-end application, which will act as a substitute for Parse.com, on a different domain you'll need to use either JSONP on the front-end or custom CORS headers on a back-end. This topic will be covered later in the book.

Right now the structure of the application should look like this:

```
1 index.html
2   css/bootstrap.min.css
3   css/style.css
4   js/app.js
```

Let's create a visual representation for the Chat app. What we want is just to display a list of messages with names of users in chronological order. Therefore, a table will do just fine, and we can dynamically create `<tr>` elements and keep inserting them as we get new messages.

Create a simple HTML file `index.html` with the following content:

- Inclusion of JS and CSS files
- Responsive structure with Twitter Bootstrap
- A table of messages
- A form for new messages

Let's start with the `head` and dependencies. We'll include CDN jQuery, local `app.js`, local minified Twitter Bootstrap and custom stylesheet `style.css`:

⁵⁵<https://parse.com/docs/rest>

⁵⁶<https://github.com/azat-co/rpjs/tree/master/rest>

```

1  <!DOCTYPE html>
2  <html lang="en">
3      <head>
4          <script
5              src=
6                  "https://ajax.googleapis.com/ajax/libs/jquery/1.7.2/jquery.min.js"
7                  type ="text/javascript"
8                  language ="javascript" ></script>
9          <script src="js/app.js" type="text/javascript"
10             language ="javascript" ></script>
11         <link href="css/bootstrap.min.css" type="text/css"
12             rel="stylesheet" />
13         <link href="css/bootstrap-responsive.min.css" type="text/css"
14             rel="stylesheet" />
15         <link href="css/style.css" type="text/css" rel="stylesheet" />
16     </head>

```

The body element will have typical Twitter Bootstrap scaffolding elements defined by classes **container-fluid** and **row-fluid**:

```

1  <body>
2      <div class="container-fluid">
3          <div class="row-fluid">
4              <h1>Chat with Parse REST API</h1>

```

The table of messages is empty, because we'll populate it programmatically from within the JS code:

```

1      <table class="table table-bordered table-striped">
2          <caption>Messages</caption>
3          <thead>
4              <tr>
5                  <th>
6                      Username
7                  </th>
8                  <th>
9                      Message
10                 </th>
11             </tr>
12         </thead>
13         <tbody>
14             <tr>
15                 <td colspan="2">No messages</td>
16             </tr>
17         </tbody>
18     </table>
19 </div>

```

Another row and here is our new message form in which the **SEND** button uses Twitter Bootstrap classes **btn** and **btn-primary**:

```

1   <div class="row-fluid">
2     <form id="new-user">
3       <input type="text" name="username"
4         placeholder="Username" />
5       <input type="text" name="message"
6         placeholder="Message" />
7       <a id="send" class="btn btn-primary">SEND</a>
8     </form>
9   </div>
10  </div>
11  </body>
12 </html>
```

The full source code for **index.html**:

```

1  <!DOCTYPE html>
2  <html lang="en">
3    <head>
4      <script
5        src=
6          "https://ajax.googleapis.com/ajax/libs/jquery/1.7.2/jquery.min.js"
7          type ="text/javascript"
8          language ="javascript" ></script>
9      <script src="js/app.js" type="text/javascript"
10        language ="javascript" ></script>
11      <link href="css/bootstrap.min.css" type="text/css"
12        rel="stylesheet" />
13      <link href="css/bootstrap-responsive.min.css" type="text/css"
14        rel="stylesheet" />
15      <link href="css/style.css" type="text/css" rel="stylesheet" />
16    </head>
17    <body>
18      <div class="container-fluid">
19        <div class="row-fluid">
20          <h1>Chat with Parse REST API</h1>
21          <table class="table table-bordered table-striped">
22            <caption>Messages</caption>
23            <thead>
24              <tr>
25                <th>
26                  Username
27                </th>
```

```

28      <th>
29          Message
30      </th>
31  </tr>
32 </thead>
33 <tbody>
34  <tr>
35      <td colspan="2">No messages</td>
36  </tr>
37 </tbody>
38 </table>
39 </div>
40 <div class="row-fluid">
41  <form id="new-user">
42      <input type="text" name="username"
43          placeholder="Username" />
44      <input type="text" name="message"
45          placeholder="Message" />
46      <a id="send" class="btn btn-primary">SEND</a>
47  </form>
48 </div>
49 </div>
50 </body>
51 </html>

```

The table will contain our messages. The form will provide input for new messages.

Now we are going to write three main functions:

1. `getMessages()`: the function to get the messages
2. `updateView()`: the function to render the list of messages
3. `$('#send').click(...)`: the function that triggers sending a new message

To keep things simple, we'll put all of the logic in one file `app.js`. Of course, it's a good idea to separate code base on the functionality when your project grows larger.

Replace these values with your own, and be careful to use the REST API Key (not the JavaScript SDK Key from the previous example):

```

1  var parseID='YOUR_APP_ID';
2  var parseRestKey='YOUR_REST_API_KEY';

```

Wrap everything in `document.ready`, fetch messages, and define `SEND` on click event:

```
1 $(document).ready(function(){
2     getMessages();
3     $("#send").click(function(){
4         var username = $('input[name=username]').attr('value');
5         var message = $('input[name=message]').attr('value');
6         console.log(username)
7         console.log('!!!')
```

When we submit a new message, we make the HTTP call with the `jQuery.ajax` function:

```
1 $.ajax({
2     url: 'https://api.parse.com/1/classes/MessageBoard',
3     headers: {
4         'X-Parse-Application-Id': parseID,
5         'X-Parse-REST-API-Key': parseRestKey
6     },
7     contentType: 'application/json',
8     dataType: 'json',
9     processData: false,
10    data: JSON.stringify({
11        'username': username,
12        'message': message
13    }),
14    type: 'POST',
15    success: function() {
16        console.log('sent');
17        getMessages();
18    },
19    error: function() {
20        console.log('error');
21    }
22 });
23 });
24 });
25 })
```

The method to fetch messages from our remote REST API server also uses the `jQuery.ajax` function:

```

1  function getMessages() {
2    $.ajax({
3      url: 'https://api.parse.com/1/classes/MessageBoard',
4      headers: {
5        'X-Parse-Application-Id': parseID,
6        'X-Parse-REST-API-Key': parseRestKey
7      },
8      contentType: 'application/json',
9      dataType: 'json',
10     type: 'GET',

```

If the request is completed successfully (status 200 or similar), we call the `updateView` function:

```

1      success: function(data) {
2        console.log('get');
3        updateView(data);
4      },
5      error: function() {
6        console.log('error');
7      }
8    });
9  }

```

This function is rendering the list of messages which we get from the server:

```
1  function updateView(messages) {
```

We use the jQuery selector `'.table tbody'` to create an object referencing that element. Then we clean all the `innerHTML` of that element:

```

1  var table=$( '.table tbody' );
2  table.html('');

```

We use the `jQuery.each` function to iterate through every message:

```

1  $.each(messages.results, function (index, value) {
2    var trEl =

```

The following code creates HTML elements (and the jQuery object of those elements) programmatically:

```

1   $('<tr><td>' +
2     + value.username
3     + '</td><td>' +
4     + value.message +
5     '</td></tr>');

```

And append (injects after) the table's tbody element:

```

1   table.append(trEl);
2 });
3 console.log(messages);
4 }

```

Then all of app.js:

```

1 var parseID='YOUR_APP_ID';
2 var parseRestKey='YOUR_REST_API_KEY';
3
4 $(document).ready(function(){
5   getMessages();
6   $("#send").click(function(){
7     var username = $('input[name=username]').attr('value');
8     var message = $('input[name=message]').attr('value');
9     console.log(username)
10    console.log('!!!')
11    $.ajax({
12      url: 'https://api.parse.com/1/classes/MessageBoard',
13      headers: {
14        'X-Parse-Application-Id': parseID,
15        'X-Parse-REST-API-Key': parseRestKey
16      },
17      contentType: 'application/json',
18      dataType: 'json',
19      processData: false,
20      data: JSON.stringify({
21        'username': username,
22        'message': message
23      }),
24      type: 'POST',
25      success: function() {
26        console.log('sent');
27        getMessages();
28      },
29      error: function() {

```

```

30         console.log('error');
31     }
32 });
33
34 });
35 })
36 function getMessages() {
37     $.ajax({
38     url: 'https://api.parse.com/1/classes/MessageBoard',
39     headers: {
40         'X-Parse-Application-Id': parseID,
41         'X-Parse-REST-API-Key': parseRestKey
42     },
43     contentType: 'application/json',
44     dataType: 'json',
45     type: 'GET',
46     success: function(data) {
47         console.log('get');
48         updateView(data);
49     },
50     error: function() {
51         console.log('error');
52     }
53 });
54 }
55
56 function updateView(messages) {
57     var table=$('#.table tbody');
58     table.html('');
59     $.each(messages.results, function (index, value) {
60         var trEl =
61             $($('<tr><td>' +
62                 + value.username +
63                 + '</td><td>' +
64                 + value.message +
65                 + '</td></tr>'));
66         table.append(trEl);
67     });
68     console.log(messages);
69 }

```

What it will do is call the `getMessages()` function and make a GET request with the `$.ajax` function from the jQuery library. A full list of parameters for the `ajax` function is available at api.jquery.com/jQuery.ajax⁵⁷. The most important ones are URL, headers and type parameters.

⁵⁷<http://api.jquery.com/jQuery.ajax/>

Then, upon successful response, it will call the `updateView()` function, which clears the table `tbody` and iterates through results of the response using the `$.each` jQuery function ([api.jquery.com/jQuery.each⁵⁸](http://api.jquery.com/jQuery.each)). Clicking on the send button will send a POST request to Parse.com REST API and then, upon successful response, get messages calling the `getMessages()` function.

Here is one of the ways to dynamically create the `div` HTML element using jQuery:

```
1  $("<div>");
```

3.9 Pushing to GitHub

To create a GitHub repository, go to [github.com⁵⁹](http://github.com), log in and create a new repository. There will be an SSH address; copy it. In your terminal window, navigate to the project folder which you would like to push to GitHub.

1. Create a local Git and `.git` folder in the root of the project folder:

```
1  $ git init
```

2. Add all of the files to the repository and start tracking them:

```
1  $ git add .
```

3. Make the first commit:

```
1  $ git commit -am "initial commit"
```

4. Add the GitHub remote destination:

```
1  $ git remote add your-github-repo-ssh-url
```

It might look something like this:

```
1  $ git remote add origin git@github.com:azat-co/simple-message-board.git
```

5. Now everything should be set to push your local Git repository to the remote destination on GitHub with the following command:

```
1  $ git push origin master
```

6. You should be able to see your files at [github.com⁶⁰](http://github.com) under your account and repository.

Later, when you make changes to the file, there is no need to repeat all of the steps above. Just execute:

⁵⁸<http://api.jquery.com/jQuery.each/>

⁵⁹<http://github.com>

⁶⁰<http://github.com>

```
1      $ git add .
2      $ git commit -am "some message"
3      $ git push origin master
```

If there are no new untracked files which you want to start tracking:

```
1      $ git commit -am "some message"
2      $ git push origin master
```

To include changes from individual files, run:

```
1      $ git commit filename -m "some message"
2      $ git push origin master
```

To remove a file from the Git repository:

```
1      $ git rm filename
```

For more Git commands:

```
1      $ git --help
```

Deploying applications with Windows Azure or Heroku is as simple as pushing code/files to GitHub. The last three steps (#4-6) would be substituted with a different remote destination (URL) and a different alias.

3.10 Deployment to Windows Azure

You should be able to deploy to Windows Azure with Git.

1. Go to the Windows Azure Portal at <https://windows.azure.com/>, log in with your Live ID and create a Web Site if you haven't done so already. Enable "Set up Git publishing" by providing a username and password (they should be different from your Live ID credentials). Copy your URL somewhere.
2. Create a local Git repository in the project folder which you would like to publish or deploy:

```
1      $ git init
```

3. Add all of the files to the repository and start tracking them:

```
1      $ git add .
```

4. Make the first commit:

```
1 $ git commit -am "initial commit"
```

5. Add Windows Azure as a remote Git repository destination:

```
1 $ git remote add azure your-url-for-remote-repository
```

In my case, this command looked like this:

```
1 $ git remote add
```

```
1 > azure https://azatazure@azat.scm.azurewebsites.net/azat.git
```

6. Push your local Git repository to the remote Windows Azure repository, which will deploy the files and application:

```
1 $ git push azure master
```

As with GitHub, there is no need to repeat the first few steps when you have updated the files later, since we already should have a local Git repository in the form of `.git` folder in the root of the project folder.

3.11 Deployment to Heroku

The only major difference is that Heroku uses Cedar Stack, which doesn't support static projects, a.k.a. plain HTML applications like our Parse.com test application or Parse.com version of the Chat application. We can use a "fake" PHP project to get past this limitation. Create a file `index.php` on the same level as `index.html` in the project folder, which you would like to publish/deploy to Heroku with the following content:

```
1 <?php echo file_get_contents('index.html'); ?>
```

For your convenience, the `index.php` file is already included in `rpus/rest`.

There is an even simpler way to publish static files on Heroku with Cedar stack which is described in the post [Static Sites on Heroku Cedar⁶¹](#). In order to make Cedar Stack work with your static files, all you need to do is to type and execute following commands in your project folder:

```
1 $ touch index.php
2 $ echo 'php_flag engine off' > .htaccess
```

Alternatively, you could use the Ruby Bamboo stack. In this case, we would need the following structure:

⁶¹<http://kennethreitz.com/static-sites-on-heroku-cedar.html>

```

1 -project folder
2   -config.ru
3   /public
4     -index.html
5     -/css
6     app.js
7     ...

```

The path in *index.html* to CSS and other assets should be relative, i.e., ‘css/style.css’. The *config.ru* file should contain the following code:

```

1 use Rack::Static,
2   :urls => ["/stylesheets", "/images"],
3   :root => "public"
4
5 run lambda { |env|
6   [
7     200,
8     {
9       'Content-Type' => 'text/html',
10      'Cache-Control' => 'public, max-age=86400'
11    },
12    File.open('public/index.html', File::RDONLY)
13  ]
14 }

```

For more details, you could refer to [devcenter.heroku.com/articles/static-sites-on-heroku⁶²](https://devcenter.heroku.com/articles/static-sites-on-heroku).

Once you have all of the support files for Cedar stack, or Bamboo, follow these steps:

1. Create a local Git repository and *.git* folder if you haven’t done so already:

```
1 $ git init
```

2. Add files:

```
1 $ git add .
```

3. Commit files and changes:

```
1 $ git commit -m "my first commit"
```

4. Create the Heroku Cedar stack application and add the remote destination:

⁶²<https://devcenter.heroku.com/articles/static-sites-on-heroku>

```
1 $ heroku create
```

If everything went well, it should tell you that the remote has been added and the app has been created, and give you the app name.

5. To look up the remote type and execute (*optional*):

```
1 $ git remote show
```

6. Deploy the code to Heroku with:

```
1 $ git push heroku master
```

Terminal logs should tell you whether or not the deployment went smoothly.

7. To open the app in your default browser, type:

```
1 $ heroku open
```

or just go to the URL of your app, something like “<http://yourappname-NNNN.herokuapp.com>”.

8. To look at the Heroku logs for this app, type:

```
1 $ heroku logs
```

To update the app with the new code, repeat the following steps **only**:

```
1 $ git add -A  
2 $ git commit -m "commit for deploy to heroku"  
3 $ git push -f heroku
```



Note

You'll be assigned a new application URL each time you create a new Heroku app with the command: `$ heroku create`.

3.12 Updating and Deleting of Messages

In accordance with REST API, an update on an object is performed via the PUT method and delete — DELETE. Both of them can easily be performed with the same `jQuery .ajax` function that we've used for GET and POST, as long as we provide an ID of an object on which we want to execute an operation.

4 Intro to Backbone.js

Summary: demonstration of how to build Backbone.js application from scratch and use views, collections, subviews, models, event binding, AMD, Require.js on the example of the apple database application.

“Code is not an asset. It’s a liability. The more you write, the more you’ll have to maintain later.”
— Unknown

4.1 Setting up Backbone.js App from Scratch

We’re going to build a typical starter “Hello World” application using Backbone.js and Model-View-Controller (MVC) architecture. I know it might sound like overkill in the beginning, but as we go along we’ll add more and more complexity, including Models, Subviews and Collections.

A full source code for the “Hello World” app is available at GitHub under github.com/azat-co/rpjs/backbone/hello-world¹.

4.1.1 Dependencies

Download the following libraries:

- [jQuery 1.9 development source file](https://code.jquery.com/jquery-1.9.0.js)²
- [Underscore.js development source file](http://underscorejs.org/underscore.js)³
- [Backbone.js development source file](http://backbonejs.org/backbone.js)⁴

And include these frameworks in the **index.html** file like this:

¹<https://github.com/azat-co/rpjs/tree/master/backbone/hello-world>

²<http://code.jquery.com/jquery-1.9.0.js>

³<http://underscorejs.org/underscore.js>

⁴<http://backbonejs.org/backbone.js>

```

1  <!DOCTYPE>
2  <html>
3  <head>
4      <script src="jquery.js"></script>
5      <script src="underscore.js"></script>
6      <script src="backbone.js"></script>
7
8      <script>
9          //TODO write some awesome JS code!
10     </script>
11
12 </head>
13 <body>
14 </body>
15 </html>
```



Note

We can also put `<script>` tags right after the `</body>` tag in the end of the file. This will change the order in which scripts and the rest of HTML are loaded, and impact performance in large files.

Let's define a simple Backbone.js Router inside of a `<script>` tag:

```

1  ...
2  var router = Backbone.Router.extend({
3  });
4  ...
```



Note

For now, to Keep It Simple Stupid (KISS), we'll be putting all of our JavaScript code right into the `index.html` file. This is not a good idea for a real development or production code. We'll refactor it later.

Then set up a special `routes` property inside of an `extend` call:

```

1  var router = Backbone.Router.extend({
2      routes: {
3      }
4  });
```

The Backbone.js `routes` property needs to be in the following format: `'path/:param' : 'action'` which will result in the `filename#path/param` URL triggering a function named `action` (defined in the Router object). For now, we'll add a single `home` route:

```

1  var router = Backbone.Router.extend({
2    routes: {
3      '' : 'home'
4    }
5  });

```

This is good, but now we need to add a **home** function:

```

1  var router = Backbone.Router.extend({
2    routes: {
3      '' : 'home'
4    },
5    home: function(){
6      //TODO render html
7    }
8  });

```

We'll come back to the **home** function later to add more logic for creating and rendering of a View. Right now we should define our **homeView**:

```

1  var homeView = Backbone.View.extend({
2 });

```

It looks familiar, right? Backbone.js uses similar syntax for all of its components: the **extend** function and a JSON object as a parameter to it.

There are a multiple ways to proceed from now on, but the best practice is to use the **el** and **template** properties, which are magical, i.e., special in Backbone.js:

```

1  var homeView = Backbone.View.extend({
2    el: 'body',
3    template: _.template('Hello World')
4  });

```

The property **el** is just a string that holds the jQuery selector (you can use class name with '.' and id name with '#'). The template property has been assigned an Underscore.js function **template** with just a plain text 'Hello World'.

To render our **homeView** we use **this.\$el** which is a compiled jQuery object referencing element in an **el** property, and the jQuery **.html()** function to replace HTML with **this.template()** value. Here is what the full code for our Backbone.js View looks like:

```

1  var homeView = Backbone.View.extend({
2    el: 'body',
3    template: _.template('Hello World'),
4    render: function(){
5      this.$el.html(this.template({}));
6    }
7  });

```

Now, if we go back to the **router** we can add these two lines to the **home** function:

```

1  var router = Backbone.Router.extend({
2    routes: {
3      '' : 'home'
4    },
5    initialize: function(){
6    },
7    home: function(){
8      this.homeView = new homeView;
9      this.homeView.render();
10     }
11   });
12 });

```

The first line will create the *homeView* object and assign it to the *homeView* property of the router. The second line will call the *render()* method in the *homeView* object, triggering the ‘Hello World’ output.

Finally, to start a Backbone app, we call `new Router` inside of a document-ready wrapper to make sure that the file’s DOM is fully loaded:

```

1  var app;
2  $(document).ready(function(){
3    app = new router;
4    Backbone.history.start();
5  })

```

Here is the full code of the **index.html** file:

```
1  <!DOCTYPE>
2  <html>
3  <head>
4      <script src="jquery.js"></script>
5      <script src="underscore.js"></script>
6      <script src="backbone.js"></script>
7
8      <script>
9          var app;
10         var router = Backbone.Router.extend({
11             routes: {
12                 '' : 'home'
13             },
14             initialize: function(){
15                 //some code to execute
16                 //when the object is instantiated
17             },
18             home: function(){
19                 this.homeView = new homeView;
20                 this.homeView.render();
21             }
22         });
23
24         var homeView = Backbone.View.extend({
25             el: 'body',
26             template: _.template('Hello World'),
27             render: function(){
28                 this.$el.html(this.template({}));
29             }
30         );
31
32         $(document).ready(function(){
33             app = new router;
34             Backbone.history.start();
35         })
36
37     </script>
38 </head>
39 <body>
40     <div></div>
41 </body>
42 </html>
```

Open `index.html` in the browser to see if it works, i.e., the 'Hello World' message should be on the page.

4.2 Working with Collections

The full source code of this example is under [rpjs/backbone/collections⁵](#). It's built on top of "Hello World" example from the **Setting up Backbone.js App from Scratch** exercise which is available for download at [rpjs/backbone/hello-world⁶](#).

We should add some data to play around with, and to hydrate our views. To do this, add this right after the `script` tag and before the other code:

```

1  var appleData = [
2    {
3      name: "fuji",
4      url: "img/fuji.jpg"
5    },
6    {
7      name: "gala",
8      url: "img/gala.jpg"
9    }
10 ];

```

This is our apple *database*. :-) Or to be more correct, our REST API endpoint-substitute, which provides us with names and image URLs of the apples (data models).



Note

This mock dataset can be easily substituted by assigning REST API endpoints of your back-end to `url` properties in Backbone.js Collections and/or Models, and calling the `fetch()` method on them.

Now to make the User Experience (UX) a little bit better, we can add a new route to the `routes` object in the Backbone Route:

```

1 ...
2 routes: {
3   '' : 'home',
4   'apples/:appleName': 'loadApple'
5 },
6 ...

```

This will allow users to go to `index.html#apples/SOMENAME` and expect to see some information about an apple. This information will be fetched and rendered by the `loadApple` function in the Backbone Router definition:

⁵<https://github.com/azat-co/rpjs/tree/master/backbone/collections>

⁶<https://github.com/azat-co/rpjs/tree/master/backbone/hello-world>

```

1  loadApple: function(appleName){
2      this.appleView.render(appleName);
3  }

```

Have you noticed an **appleName** variable? It's exactly the same name as the one that we've used in **route**. This is how we can access query string parameters (e.g. ?param=value&q=search) in Backbone.js.

Now we'll need to refactor some more code to create a Backbone Collection, populate it with data in our **appleData** variable, and to pass the collection to **homeView** and **appleView**. Conveniently enough, we do it all in the Router constructor method **initialize**:

```

1  initialize: function(){
2      var apples = new Apples();
3      apples.reset(appleData);
4      this.homeView = new homeView({collection: apples});
5      this.appleView = new appleView({collection: apples});
6  },

```

At this point, we're pretty much done with the Router class and it should look like this:

```

1  var router = Backbone.Router.extend({
2      routes: {
3          '' : 'home',
4          'apples/:appleName': 'loadApple'
5      },
6      initialize: function(){
7          var apples = new Apples();
8          apples.reset(appleData);
9          this.homeView = new homeView({collection: apples});
10         this.appleView = new appleView({collection: apples});
11     },
12     home: functionthis.homeView.render();
14     },
15     loadApple: function(appleName){
16         this.appleView.render(appleName);
17     }
18 });

```

Let's modify our **homeView** a bit to see the whole *database*:

```

1  var homeView = Backbone.View.extend({
2    el: 'body',
3    template: _.template('Apple data: <%= data %>'),
4    render: function(){
5      this.$el.html(this.template({
6        data: JSON.stringify(this.collection.models)
7      }));
8    }
9  });

```

For now, we just output the string representation of the JSON object in the browser. This is not user-friendly at all, but later we'll improve it by using a list and subviews.

Our apple Backbone Collection is very clean and simple:

```

1  var Apples = Backbone.Collection.extend({
2
});

```



Note

Backbone automatically creates models inside of a collection when we use the `fetch()` or `reset()` functions.

Apple view is not any more complex; it has only two properties: `template` and `render`. In a template, we want to display `figure`, `img` and `figcaption` tags with specific values. The Underscore.js template engine is handy at this task:

```

1  var appleView = Backbone.View.extend({
2    template: _.template(
3      '<figure>\n        \n        <figcaption><%= attributes.name %></figcaption>\n      </figure>'),
4    ...
5  });

```

To make a JavaScript string, which has HTML tags in it, more readable we can use the backslash line breaker escape (\) symbol, or close strings and concatenate them with a plus sign (+). This is an example of `appleView` above, which is refactored using the latter approach:

```

1  var appleView = Backbone.View.extend({
2      template: _.template(
3          '<figure>' +
4              '' +
5              '<figcaption><%= attributes.name %></figcaption>' +
6              '</figure>'),
7      ...

```

Please note the ‘`<%=`’ and ‘`%>`’ symbols; they are the instructions for Underscore.js to print values in properties `url` and `name` of the `attributes` object.

Finally, we’re adding the `render` function to the `appleView` class.

```

1  render: function(appleName){
2      var appleModel = this.collection.where({name:appleName})[0];
3      var appleHtml = this.template(appleModel);
4      $('body').html(appleHtml);
5  }

```

We find a model within the collection via `where()` method and use `[]` to pick the first element. Right now, the `render` function is responsible for both loading the data and rendering it. Later we’ll refactor the function to separate these two functionalities into different methods.

The whole app, which is in the [rpjs/backbone/collections/index.html](#)⁷ folder, looks like this:

```

1  <!DOCTYPE>
2  <html>
3  <head>
4      <script src="jquery.js"></script>
5      <script src="underscore.js"></script>
6      <script src="backbone.js"></script>
7
8      <script>
9          var appleData = [
10              {
11                  name: "fuji",
12                  url: "img/fuji.jpg"
13              },
14              {
15                  name: "gala",
16                  url: "img/gala.jpg"
17              }
18          ];
19          var app;

```

⁷<https://github.com/azat-co/rpjs/tree/master/backbone/collections>

```
20  var router = Backbone.Router.extend({
21    routes: {
22      "" : "home",
23      "apples/:appleName": "loadApple"
24    },
25    initialize: function(){
26      var apples = new Apples();
27      apples.reset(appleData);
28      this.homeView = new homeView({collection: apples});
29      this.appleView = new appleView({collection: apples});
30    },
31    home: function(){
32      this.homeView.render();
33    },
34    loadApple: function(appleName){
35      this.appleView.render(appleName);
36    }
37  });
38
39  var homeView = Backbone.View.extend({
40    el: 'body',
41    template: _.template('Apple data: <%= data %>'),
42    render: function(){
43      this.$el.html(this.template({
44        data: JSON.stringify(this.collection.models)
45      }));
46    }
47    //TODO subviews
48  );
49
50  var Apples = Backbone.Collection.extend({
51
52  });
53  var appleView = Backbone.View.extend({
54    template: _.template('<figure> \
55       \
56      <figcaption><%= attributes.name %></figcaption> \
57    </figure>'),
58    //TODO re-write with load apple and event binding
59    render: function(appleName){
60      var appleModel = this.collection.where({
61        name:appleName
62      })[0];
63      var appleHtml = this.template(appleModel);
64      $('body').html(appleHtml);
```

```

65      }
66  });
67 $(document).ready(function(){
68     app = new router;
69     Backbone.history.start();
70 })
71
72 </script>
73 </head>
74 <body>
75   <div></div>
76 </body>
77 </html>

```

Open collections/index.html file in your browser. You should see the data from our “database”, i.e., Apple data: [{"name": "fuji", "url": "img/fuji.jpg"}, {"name": "gala", "url": "img/gala.jpg"}].

Now, let’s go to collections/index.html#apples/fuji or collections/index.html#apples/gala in your browser. We expect to see an image with a caption. It’s a detailed view of an item, which in this case is an apple. Nice work!

4.3 Event Binding

In real life, getting data does not happen instantaneously, so let’s refactor our code to simulate it. For a better UI/UX, we’ll also have to show a loading icon (a.k.a. spinner or ajax-loader) to users to notify them that the information is being loaded.

It’s a good thing that we have event binding in Backbone. Without it, we’ll have to pass a function that renders HTML as a callback to the data loading function, to make sure that the rendering function is not executed before we have the actual data to display.

Therefore, when a user goes to detailed view (apples/:id) we only call the function that loads the data. Then, with the proper event listeners, our view will automagically (this is not a typo) update itself, when there is a new data (or on a data change, Backbone.js supports multiple and even custom events).

Let’s change the code in the router:

```

1 ...
2   loadApple: function(appleName){
3     this.appleView.loadApple(appleName);
4   }
5 ...

```

Everything else remains the same until we get to the `appleView` class. We’ll need to add a constructor or an `initialize` method, which is a special word/property in the Backbone.js framework. It’s called each time we create an instance of an object, i.e., `var someObj = new SomeObject()`. We can also pass extra parameters to

the **initialize** function, as we did with our views (we passed an object with the key **collection** and the value of **apples** Backbone Collection). Read more on Backbone.js constructors at [backbonejs.org/#View-constructor⁸](http://backbonejs.org/#View-constructor).

```

1 ...
2 var appleView = Backbone.View.extend({
3   initialize: function(){
4     //TODO: create and setup model (aka an apple)
5   },
6 ...

```

Great, we have our **initialize** function. Now we need to create a model which will represent a single apple and set up proper event listeners on the model. We'll use two types of events, **change** and a custom event called **spinner**. To do that, we are going to use the **on()** function, which takes these properties: **on(event, actions, context)** — read more about it at [backbonejs.org/#Events-on⁹](http://backbonejs.org/#Events-on):

```

1 ...
2 var appleView = Backbone.View.extend({
3   this.model = new (Backbone.Model.extend({}));
4   this.model.bind('change', this.render, this);
5   this.bind('spinner',this.showSpinner, this);
6 },
7 ...

```

The code above basically boils down to two simple things:

1. Call **render()** function of **appleView** object when the model has changed
2. Call **showSpinner()** method of **appleView** object when event **spinner** has been fired.

So far, so good, right? But what about the spinner, a GIF icon? Let's create a new property in **appleView**:

```

1 ...
2 templateSpinner: '',
3 ...

```

Remember the **loadApple** call in the router? This is how we can implement the function in **appleView**:

⁸<http://backbonejs.org/#View-constructor>
⁹<http://backbonejs.org/#Events-on>

```

1 ...
2 loadApple:function(appleName){
3   this.trigger('spinner');
4   //show spinner GIF image
5   var view = this;
6   //we'll need to access that inside of a closure
7   setTimeout(function(){
8     //simulates real time lag when
9     //fetching data from the remote server
10    view.model.set(view.collection.where({
11      name:appleName
12    })[0].attributes);
13  },1000);
14 },
15 ...

```

The first line will trigger the `spinner` event (the function for which we still have to write).

The second line is just for scoping issues (so we can use `appleView` inside of the closure).

The `setTimeout` function is simulating a time lag of a real remote server response. Inside of it, we assign attributes of a selected model to our view's model by using a `model.set()` function and a `model.attributes` property (which returns the properties of a model).

Now we can remove an extra code from the `render` method and implement the `showSpinner` function:

```

1 render: function(appleName){
2   var appleHtml = this.template(this.model);
3   $('body').html(appleHtml);
4 },
5 showSpinner: function(){
6   $('body').html(this.templateSpinner);
7 }
8 ...

```

That's all! Open `index.html#apples/gala` or `index.html#apples/fuji` in your browser and enjoy the loading animation while waiting for an apple image to load.

The full code of the `index.html` file:

```
1  <!DOCTYPE>
2  <html>
3  <head>
4      <script src="jquery.js"></script>
5      <script src="underscore.js"></script>
6      <script src="backbone.js"></script>
7
8      <script>
9          var appleData = [
10              {
11                  name: "fuji",
12                  url: "img/fuji.jpg"
13              },
14              {
15                  name: "gala",
16                  url: "img/gala.jpg"
17              }
18          ];
19          var app;
20          var router = Backbone.Router.extend({
21              routes: {
22                  "" : "home",
23                  "apples/:appleName": "loadApple"
24              },
25              initialize: function(){
26                  var apples = new Apples();
27                  apples.reset(appleData);
28                  this.homeView = new homeView({collection: apples});
29                  this.appleView = new appleView({collection: apples});
30              },
31              home: function(){
32                  this.homeView.render();
33              },
34              loadApple: function(appleName){
35                  this.appleView.loadApple(appleName);
36
37              }
38          });
39
40          var homeView = Backbone.View.extend({
41              el: 'body',
42              template: _.template('Apple data: <%= data %>'),
43              render: function(){
44                  this.$el.html(this.template({
45                      data: JSON.stringify(this.collection.models)
```

```
46      });
47  }
48  //TODO subviews
49 });
50
51 var Apples = Backbone.Collection.extend({
52
53 });
54 var appleView = Backbone.View.extend({
55   initialize: function(){
56     this.model = new Backbone.Model.extend({});
57     this.model.on('change', this.render, this);
58     this.on('spinner', this.showSpinner, this);
59   },
60   template: _.template('<figure> \
61      \
62     <figcaption><%= attributes.name %></figcaption> \
63   </figure>'),
64   templateSpinner: '',
65
66   loadApple:function(appleName){
67     this.trigger('spinner');
68     var view = this; //we'll need to access
69     //that inside of a closure
70     setTimeout(function(){ //simulates real time
71       //lag when fetching data from the remote server
72       view.model.set(view.collection.where({
73         name:appleName
74       })[0].attributes);
75     },1000);
76
77   },
78
79   render: function(appleName){
80     var appleHtml = this.template(this.model);
81     $('body').html(appleHtml);
82   },
83   showSpinner: function(){
84     $('body').html(this.templateSpinner);
85   }
86
87 });
88 $(document).ready(function(){
89   app = new router;
90   Backbone.history.start();
```

```

91      })
92
93    </script>
94  </head>
95  <body>
96    <a href="#apples/fuji">fuji</a>
97    <div></div>
98  </body>
99  </html>

```

4.4 Views and Subviews with Underscore.js

This example is available at [rpjs/backbone/subview¹⁰](https://rpjs/backbone/subview).

Subviews are Backbone Views that are created and used inside of another Backbone View. A subviews concept is a great way to abstract (separate) UI events (e.g., clicks), and templates for similarly structured elements (e.g., apples).

A use case of a Subview might include a row in a table, a list item in a list, a paragraph, a new line, etc.

We'll refactor our home page to show a nice list of apples. Each list item will have an apple name and a "buy" link with an `onClick` event. Let's start by creating a subview for a single apple with our standard Backbone `extend()` function:

```

1 ...
2 var appleItemView = Backbone.View.extend({
3   tagName: 'li',
4   template: _.template('
5     +'<a href="#apples/<%=name%>" target="_blank">' +
6     +'<%=name%>' +
7     +'</a>&nbsp;<a class="add-to-cart" href="#">buy</a>'),
8   events: {
9     'click .add-to-cart': 'addToCart'
10 },
11   render: function() {
12     this.$el.html(this.template(this.model.attributes));
13   },
14   addToCart: function(){
15     this.model.collection.trigger('addToCart', this.model);
16   }
17 });
18 ...

```

Now we can populate the object with `tagName`, `template`, `events`, `render` and `addToCart` properties/methods.

¹⁰<https://github.com/azat-co/rpjs/tree/master/backbone/subview>

```

1 ...
2 tagName: 'li',
3 ...

```

tagName automatically allows Backbone.js to create an HTML element with the specified tag name, in this case `` — list item. This will be a representation of a single apple, a row in our list.

```

1 ...
2 template: _.template('
3   +'<a href="#apples/<%=name%>" target="_blank">' +
4     '<%=name%>' +
5     '</a>&nbsp;<a class="add-to-cart" href="#">buy</a>'),
6 ...

```

The template is just a string with Underscore.js instructions. They are wrapped in `<%` and `%>` symbols. `<%=` simply means print a value. The same code can be written with backslash escapes:

```

1 ...
2 template: _.template('\
3   <a href="#apples/<%=name%>" target="_blank">\n' +
4     '<%=name%>\n' +
5     '</a>&nbsp;<a class="add-to-cart" href="#">buy</a>\n' +
6   '),
7 ...

```

Each `` will have two anchor elements (`<a>`), links to a detailed apple view (`#apples/:appleName`) and a **buy** button. Now we're going to attach an event listener to the **buy** button:

```

1 ...
2 events: {
3   'click .add-to-cart': 'addToCart'
4 },
5 ...

```

The syntax follows this rule:

```
1 event + jQuery element selector: function name
```

Both the key and the value (right and left parts separated by the colon) are strings. For example:

```
1 'click .add-to-cart': 'addToCart'
```

or

```
1  'click #load-more': 'loadMoreData'
```

To render each item in the list, we'll use the `jQuery html()` function on the `this.$el` jQuery object, which is the `` HTML element based on our `tagName` attribute:

```
1  ...
2  render: function() {
3      this.$el.html(this.template(this.model.attributes));
4  },
5  ...
```

`addToCart` will use the `trigger()` function to notify the collection that this particular model (apple) is up for the purchase by the user:

```
1  ...
2  addToCart: function(){
3      this.model.collection.trigger('addToCart', this.model);
4  }
5  ...
```

Here is the full code of the `appleItemView` Backbone View class:

```
1  ...
2  var appleItemView = Backbone.View.extend({
3      tagName: 'li',
4      template: .template('
5          +'<a href="#apples/<%=name%>" target="_blank">'
6          +'<%=name%>'
7          +'</a>&nbsp;<a class="add-to-cart" href="#">buy</a>'),
8      events: {
9          'click .add-to-cart': 'addToCart'
10     },
11     render: function() {
12         this.$el.html(this.template(this.model.attributes));
13     },
14     addToCart: function(){
15         this.model.collection.trigger('addToCart', this.model);
16     }
17 });
18 ...
```

Easy peasy! But what about the master view, which is supposed to render all of our items (apples) and provide a wrapper `` container for `` HTML elements? We need to modify and enhance our `homeView`.

To begin with, we can add extra properties of string type understandable by `jQuery` as selectors to `homeView`:

```

1 ...
2 el: 'body',
3 listEl: '.apples-list',
4 cartEl: '.cart-box',
5 ...

```

We can use properties from above in the template, or just hard-code them (we'll refactor our code later) in **homeView**:

```

1 ...
2 template: _.template('Apple data: \
3   <ul class="apples-list"> \
4     </ul> \
5   <div class="cart-box"></div>'),
6 ...

```

The **initialize** function will be called when **homeView** is created (`new homeView()`) — in it we render our template (with our favorite by now `html()` function), and attach an event listener to the collection (which is a set of apple models):

```

1 ...
2 initialize: function() {
3   this.$el.html(this.template);
4   this.collection.on('addToCart', this.showCart, this);
5 },
6 ...

```

The syntax for the binding event is covered in the previous section. In essence, it is calling the `showCart()` function of **homeView**. In this function, we append `appleName` to the cart (along with a line break, a `
` element):

```

1 ...
2 showCart: function(appleModel) {
3   $(this.cartEl).append(appleModel.attributes.name + '<br/>');
4 },
5 ...

```

Finally, here is our long-awaited `render()` method, in which we iterate through each model in the collection (each apple), create an `appleItemView` for each apple, create an `` element for each apple, and append that element to `view.listEl` — `` element with a class `apples-list` in the DOM:

```

1 ...
2   render: function(){
3     view = this;
4     //so we can use view inside of closure
5     this.collection.each(function(apple){
6       var appleSubView = new appleItemView({model:apple});
7       // creates subview with model apple
8       appleSubView.render();
9       // compiles template and single apple data
10      $(view.listEl).append(appleSubView.$el);
11      //append jQuery object from single
12      //apple to apples-list DOM element
13    });
14  }
15 ...

```

Let's make sure we didn't miss anything in the **homeView** Backbone View:

```

1 ...
2 var homeView = Backbone.View.extend({
3   el: 'body',
4   listEl: '.apples-list',
5   cartEl: '.cart-box',
6   template: _.template('Apple data: \
7     <ul class="apples-list"> \
8       </ul> \
9       <div class="cart-box"></div>'),
10  initialize: function() {
11    this.$el.html(this.template);
12    this.collection.on('addToCart', this.showCart, this);
13  },
14  showCart: function(appleModel) {
15    $(this.cartEl).append(appleModel.attributes.name+ '<br/>');
16  },
17  render: function(){
18    view = this; //so we can use view inside of closure
19    this.collection.each(function(apple){
20      var appleSubView = new appleItemView({model:apple});
21      // create subview with model apple
22      appleSubView.render();
23      // compiles template and single apple data
24      $(view.listEl).append(appleSubView.$el);
25      //append jQuery object from single apple
26      //to apples-list DOM element
27    });
}

```

```

28      }
29  });
30  ...

```

You should be able to click on the buy, and the cart will populate with the apples of your choice. Looking at an individual apple does not require typing its name in the URL address bar of the browser anymore. We can click on the name and it opens a new window with a detailed view.

Apple data:

- [fuji](#) [buy](#)
- [gala](#) [buy](#)

```

gala
fuji
fuji
fuji
fuji
fuji
fuji
gala
gala
gala
gala
gala

```

The list of apples rendered by subviews.

By using subviews, we reused the template for all of the items (apples) and attached a specific event to each of them. Those events are smart enough to pass the information about the model to other objects: views and collections.

Just in case, here is the full code for the subviews example, which is also available at [rpjs/backbone/subview/index.html¹¹](#):

```

1  <!DOCTYPE>
2  <html>
3  <head>
4    <script src="jquery.js"></script>
5    <script src="underscore.js"></script>
6    <script src="backbone.js"></script>
7
8    <script>
9      var appleData = [
10        {
11          name: "fuji",
12          url: "img/fuji.jpg"

```

¹¹<https://github.com/azat-co/rpjs/blob/master/backbone/subview/index.html>

```
13      },
14      {
15          name: "gala",
16          url: "img/gala.jpg"
17      }
18 ];
19 var app;
20 var router = Backbone.Router.extend({
21     routes: {
22         "" : "home",
23         "apples/:appleName": "loadApple"
24     },
25     initialize: function(){
26         var apples = new Apples();
27         apples.reset(appleData);
28         this.homeView = new homeView({collection: apples});
29         this.appleView = new appleView({collection: apples});
30     },
31     home: function(){
32         this.homeView.render();
33     },
34     loadApple: function(appleName){
35         this.appleView.loadApple(appleName);
36     }
37 });
38 });
39 var appleItemView = Backbone.View.extend({
40     tagName: 'li',
41     // template: _.template('
42     //   +'' +
43     //   +'<%=name%>' +
44     //   +'</a>&nbsp;<a class="add-to-cart" href="#">buy</a>'\),
45     template: \_.template\('\
46         <a href="#apples/<%=name%>" target="\_blank"> \
47             <%=name%> \
48             </a>&nbsp;<a class="add-to-cart" href="#">buy</a> \
49     '\),
50     events: {
51         'click .add-to-cart': 'addToCart'
52     },
53     render: function\(\) {
54         this.\$el.html\(this.template\(this.model.attributes\)\);
55     },
56     addToCart: function\(\){
```

```
58      this.model.collection.trigger('addToCart', this.model);
59  }
60 });
61
62 var homeView = Backbone.View.extend({
63   el: 'body',
64   listEl: '.apples-list',
65   cartEl: '.cart-box',
66   template: _.template('Apple data: \
67     <ul class="apples-list"> \
68       </ul> \
69       <div class="cart-box"></div>'),
70   initialize: function() {
71     this.$el.html(this.template);
72     this.collection.on('addToCart', this.showCart, this);
73   },
74   showCart: function(appleModel) {
75     $(this.cartEl).append(appleModel.attributes.name + '<br/>');
76   },
77   render: function(){
78     view = this; //so we can use view inside of closure
79     this.collection.each(function(apple){
80       var appleSubView = new appleItemView({model:apple});
81       // create subview with model apple
82       appleSubView.render();
83       // compiles template and single apple data
84       $(view.listEl).append(appleSubView.$el);
85       //append jQuery object from
86       //single apple to apples-list DOM element
87     });
88   }
89 });
90
91 var Apples = Backbone.Collection.extend({
92 });
93
94 var appleView = Backbone.View.extend({
95   initialize: function(){
96     this.model = new (Backbone.Model.extend({}));
97     this.model.on('change', this.render, this);
98     this.on('spinner', this.showSpinner, this);
99   },
100  template: _.template('<figure> \
101     \
102    <figcaption><%= attributes.name %></figcaption> \

```

```

103         '</figure>'),
104     templateSpinner: '',
105     loadApple: function(appleName){
106       this.trigger('spinner');
107       var view = this;
108       //we'll need to access that inside of a closure
109       setTimeout(function(){
110         //simulates real time lag when fetching data
111         // from the remote server
112         view.model.set(view.collection.where({
113           name:appleName
114         })[0].attributes);
115         },1000);
116       },
117       render: function(appleName){
118         var appleHtml = this.template(this.model);
119         $('body').html(appleHtml);
120       },
121       showSpinner: function(){
122         $('body').html(this.templateSpinner);
123       }
124     );
125
126     $(document).ready(function(){
127       app = new router;
128       Backbone.history.start();
129     })
130
131   '</script>
132 </head>
133 <body>
134   <div></div>
135 </body>
136 </html>

```

The link to an individual item, e.g., `collections/index.html#apples/fuji`, also should work independently, by typing it in the browser address bar.

4.5 Refactoring

At this point you are probably wondering what is the benefit of using the framework and still having multiple classes, objects and elements with different functionalities in one *single* file. This was done for the purpose of adhering to the *Keep it Simple Stupid* (KISS) principle.

The bigger your application is, the more pain there is in unorganized code base. Let's break down our application into multiple files where each file will be one of these types:

- view
- template
- router
- collection
- model

Let's write these scripts to include tags into our **index.html** head — or body, as noted previously:

```
1 <script src="apple-item.view.js"></script>
2 <script src="apple-home.view.js"></script>
3 <script src="apple.view.js"></script>
4 <script src="apples.js"></script>
5 <script src="apple-app.js"></script>
```

The names don't have to follow the convention of dashes and dots, as long as it's easy to tell what each file is supposed to do.

Now, let's copy our objects/classes into the corresponding files.

Our main **index.html** file should look very minimalistic:

```
1 <!DOCTYPE>
2 <html>
3 <head>
4   <script src="jquery.js"></script>
5   <script src="underscore.js"></script>
6   <script src="backbone.js"></script>
7
8   <script src="apple-item.view.js"></script>
9   <script src="apple-home.view.js"></script>
10  <script src="apple.view.js"></script>
11  <script src="apples.js"></script>
12  <script src="apple-app.js"></script>
13
14 </head>
15 <body>
16   <div></div>
17 </body>
18 </html>
```

The other files just have the code that corresponds to their filenames.

The content of **apple-item.view.js**:

```
1  var appleView = Backbone.View.extend({
2      initialize: function(){
3          this.model = new (Backbone.Model.extend({}));
4          this.model.on('change', this.render, this);
5          this.on('spinner',this.showSpinner, this);
6      },
7      template: _.template('<figure> \
8           \
9          <figcaption><%= attributes.name %></figcaption> \
10         </figure>'),
11      templateSpinner: '',
12
13      loadApple:function(appleName){
14          this.trigger('spinner');
15          var view = this;
16          //we'll need to access that inside of a closure
17          setTimeout(function(){
18              //simulates real time lag when fetching
19              //data from the remote server
20              view.model.set(view.collection.where({
21                  name:appleName
22              })[0].attributes);
23          },1000);
24
25      },
26
27      render: function(appleName){
28          var appleHtml = this.template(this.model);
29          $('body').html(appleHtml);
30      },
31      showSpinner: function(){
32          $('body').html(this.templateSpinner);
33      }
34  });
35});
```

The **apple-home.view.js** file has the **homeView** object:

```

1  var homeView = Backbone.View.extend({
2      el: 'body',
3      listEl: '.apples-list',
4      cartEl: '.cart-box',
5      template: _.template('Apple data: \
6          <ul class="apples-list"> \
7              </ul> \
8              <div class="cart-box"></div>'),
9      initialize: function() {
10         this.$el.html(this.template);
11         this.collection.on('addToCart', this.showCart, this);
12     },
13     showCart: function(appleModel) {
14         $(this.cartEl).append(appleModel.attributes.name + '<br/>');
15     },
16     render: function(){
17         view = this; //so we can use view inside of closure
18         this.collection.each(function(apple){
19             var appleSubView = new appleItemView({model:apple});
20             // create subview with model apple
21             appleSubView.render();
22             // compiles template and single apple data
23             $(view.listEl).append(appleSubView.$el);
24             //append jQuery object from
25             //single apple to apples-list DOM element
26         });
27     }
28 });

```

The `apple.view.js` file contains the master apples' list:

```

1  var appleView = Backbone.View.extend({
2      initialize: function(){
3          this.model = new (Backbone.Model.extend({}));
4          this.model.on('change', this.render, this);
5          this.on('spinner', this.showSpinner, this);
6      },
7      template: _.template(' \
8          <figure> \
9               \
10             <figcaption><%= attributes.name %></figcaption> \
11         </figure>'),
12      templateSpinner: '',
13      loadApple:function(appleName){
14          this.trigger('spinner');
15          var view = this;

```

```

15      //we'll need to access that inside of a closure
16      setTimeout(function(){
17          //simulates real time lag when
18          //fetching data from the remote server
19          view.model.set(view.collection.where({
20              name:appleName
21          })[0].attributes);
22          },1000);
23      },
24      render: function(appleName){
25          var appleHtml = this.template(this.model);
26          $('body').html(appleHtml);
27      },
28      showSpinner: function(){
29          $('body').html(this.templateSpinner);
30      }
31  });

```

`apples.js` is an empty collection:

```

1  var Apples = Backbone.Collection.extend({
2  });

```

`apple-app.js` is the main application file with the data, the router, and the starting command:

```

1  var appleData = [
2      {
3          name: "fuji",
4          url: "img/fuji.jpg"
5      },
6      {
7          name: "gala",
8          url: "img/gala.jpg"
9      }
10 ];
11 var app;
12 var router = Backbone.Router.extend({
13     routes: {
14         '' : 'home',
15         'apples/:appleName': 'loadApple'
16     },
17     initialize: function(){
18         var apples = new Apples();
19         apples.reset(appleData);

```

```

20      this.homeView = new homeView({collection: apples});
21      this.appleView = new appleView({collection: apples});
22    },
23    home: function(){
24      this.homeView.render();
25    },
26    loadApple: function(appleName){
27      this.appleView.loadApple(appleName);
28    }
29  });
30  $(document).ready(function(){
31    app = new router;
32    Backbone.history.start();
33  })

```

Now let's try to open the application. It should work exactly the same as in the previous Subviews example.

It's a way better code organization, but it's still far from perfect, because we still have HTML templates directly in the JavaScript code. The problem is that designers and developers can't work on the same files, and any change to the presentation requires a change in the main code base.

We can add a few more JS files to our `index.html` file:

```

1 <script src="apple-item.tpl.js"></script>
2 <script src="apple-home.tpl.js"></script>
3 <script src="apple-spinner.tpl.js"></script>
4 <script src="apple.tpl.js"></script>

```

Usually, one Backbone view has one template, but in the case of our `appleView` — detailed view of an apple in a separate window — we also have a spinner, a “loading” GIF animation.

The contents of the files are just global variables which are assigned some string values. Later we can use these variables in our views, when we call the Underscore.js helper method `_.template()`.

The `apple-item.tpl.js` file:

```

1 var appleItemTpl = '\
2   <a href="#apples/<%=name%>" target="_blank">\
3     <%=name%> \
4   </a>&nbsp;<a class="add-to-cart" href="#">buy</a> \
5 ';

```

The `apple-home.tpl.js` file:

```

1 var appleHomeTpl = 'Apple data: \
2   <ul class="apples-list"> \
3     </ul> \
4     <div class="cart-box"></div>';

```

The `apple-spinner.tpl.js` file:

```

1 var appleSpinnerTpl = '';

```

The `apple.tpl.js` file:

```

1 var appleTpl = '<figure> \
2    \
3   <figcaption><%= attributes.name %></figcaption> \
4 </figure>';

```

Try to start the application now. The full code is under the [rpjs/backbone/refactor¹²](#) folder.

As you can see in the previous example, we used global scoped variables (without the keyword `window`).



Warning

Be careful when you introduce a lot of variables into the global namespace (`window` keyword). There might be conflicts and other unpredictable consequences. For example, if you wrote an open source library and other developers started using the methods and properties directly, instead of using the interface, what happens later when you decide to finally remove/deprecate those global leaks? To prevent this, properly written libraries and applications use [JavaScript closures¹³](#).

Example of using closure and a global variable module definition:

```

1 (function() {
2   var apple= function() {
3     ...//do something useful like return apple object
4   };
5   window.Apple = apple;
6 })()

```

Or in case when we need to access the `app` object (which creates a dependency on that object):

¹²<https://github.com/azat-co/rpjs/tree/master/backbone/refactor>

¹³<https://developer.mozilla.org/en-US/docs/JavaScript/Guide/Closures>

```

1 (function() {
2   var app = this.app;
3   //equivalent of window.appliation
4   //in case we need a dependency (app)
5   this.apple = function() {
6     ...//return apple object/class
7     //use app variable
8   }
9   // eqivalent of window.apple = function(){...};
10 })()

```

As you can see, we've created the function and called it immediately while also wrapping everything in parentheses () .

4.6 AMD and Require.js for Development

AMD allows us to organize development code into modules, manage dependencies, and load them asynchronously. This article does a great job at explaining why AMD is a good thing: [WHY AMD?](#)¹⁴

Start your local HTTP server, e.g., [MAMP](#)¹⁵.

Let's enhance our code by using the Require.js library.

Our `index.html` will shrink even more:

```

1 <!DOCTYPE>
2 <html>
3 <head>
4   <script src="jquery.js"></script>
5   <script src="underscore.js"></script>
6   <script src="backbone.js"></script>
7   <script src="require.js"></script>
8   <script src="apple-app.js"></script>
9 </head>
10 <body>
11   <div></div>
12 </body>
13 </html>

```

We only included libraries and the single JavaScript file with our application. This file has the following structure:

¹⁴<http://requirejs.org/docs/whyamd.html>

¹⁵<http://www.mamp.info/en/index.html>

```
1 require([...],function(...){...});
```

Or in a more explanatory way:

```
1 require([
2   'name-of-the-module',
3   ...
4   'name-of-the-other-module'
5 ],function(referenceToModule, ..., referenceToOtherModule){
6   ...//some useful code
7   referenceToModule.someMethod();
8 });
```

Basically, we tell a browser to load the files from the array of filenames — first parameter of the `require()` function — and then pass our modules from those files to the anonymous callback function (second argument) as variables. Inside of the main function (anonymous callback) we can use our modules by referencing those variables. Therefore, our `apple-app.js` metamorphoses into:

```
1 require([
2   'apple-item.tpl', //can use shim plugin
3   'apple-home.tpl',
4   'apple-spinner.tpl',
5   'apple.tpl',
6   'apple-item.view',
7   'apple-home.view',
8   'apple.view',
9   'apples'
10 ],function(
11   appleItemTpl,
12   appleHomeTpl,
13   appleSpinnerTpl,
14   appleTpl,
15   appleItemView,
16   homeView,
17   appleView,
18   Apples
19 ){
20   var appleData = [
21     {
22       name: "fuji",
23       url: "img/fuji.jpg"
24     },
25     {
26       name: "gala",
```

```

27         url: "img/gala.jpg"
28     }
29 ];
30 var app;
31 var router = Backbone.Router.extend({
32 //check if need to be required
33     routes: {
34         '' : 'home',
35         'apples/:appleName': 'loadApple'
36     },
37     initialize: function(){
38         var apples = new Apples();
39         apples.reset(appleData);
40         this.homeView = new homeView({collection: apples});
41         this.appleView = new appleView({collection: apples});
42     },
43     home: function(){
44         this.homeView.render();
45     },
46     loadApple: function(appleName){
47         this.appleView.loadApple(appleName);
48     }
49 });
50 });
51
52 $(document).ready(function(){
53     app = new router;
54     Backbone.history.start();
55 })
56 });

```

We put all of the code inside the function which is a second argument of `require()`, mentioned modules by their filenames, and used dependencies via corresponding parameters. Now we should define the module itself. This is how we can do it with the `define()` method:

```
1 define([...], function(...){...})
```

The meaning is similar to the `require()` function: dependencies are strings of filenames (and paths) in the array which is passed as the first argument. The second argument is the main function that accepts other libraries as parameters (the order of parameters and modules in the array is important):

```
1 define(['name-of-the-module'], function(nameOfModule){  
2     var b = nameOfModule.render();  
3     return b;  
4 })
```



Note

There is no need to append .js to filenames. Require.js does it automatically. Shim plugin is used for importing text files such as HTML templates.

Let's start with the templates and convert them into the Require.js modules.

The new **apple-item.tpl.js** file:

```
1 define(function() {  
2     return '\  
3         <a href="#apples/<%=name%>" target="_blank">\  
4             <%=name%>\  
5         </a>&nbsp;<a class="add-to-cart" href="#">buy</a>\  
6         '  
7});
```

The **apple-home.tpl** file:

```
1 define(function(){  
2     return 'Apple data: \  
3         <ul class="apples-list">\  
4             </ul>\  
5         <div class="cart-box"></div>';  
6});
```

The **apple-spinner.tpl.js** file:

```
1 define(function(){  
2     return '';  
3});
```

The **apple.tpl.js** file:

```

1 define(function(){
2   return '<figure> \
3      \
4     <figcaption><%= attributes.name %></figcaption> \
5   </figure>';
6 });

```

The `apple-item.view.js` file:

```

1 define(function() {
2   return ' \
3     <a href="#apples/<%=name%>" target="_blank"> \
4       <%=name%> \
5     </a>&nbsp;<a class="add-to-cart" href="#">buy</a> \
6   '
7 });

```

In the `apple-home.view.js` file, we need to declare dependencies on `apple-home.tpl` and `apple-item.view.js` files:

```

1 define(['apple-home.tpl', 'apple-item.view'], function(
2   appleHomeTpl,
3   appleItemView){
4   return Backbone.View.extend({
5     el: 'body',
6     listEl: '.apples-list',
7     cartEl: '.cart-box',
8     template: _.template(appleHomeTpl),
9     initialize: function() {
10       this.$el.html(this.template);
11       this.collection.on('addToCart', this.showCart, this);
12     },
13     showCart: function(appleModel) {
14       $(this.cartEl).append(appleModel.attributes.name+ '<br/>');
15     },
16     render: function(){
17       view = this; //so we can use view inside of closure
18       this.collection.each(function(apple){
19         var appleSubView = new appleItemView({model:apple});
20         // create subview with model apple
21         appleSubView.render();
22         // compiles template and single apple data
23         $(view.listEl).append(appleSubView.$el);
24         //append jQuery object from

```

```
25      //single apple to apples-list DOM element
26      });
27  }
28 });
29 })
```

The `apple.view.js` file depends on two templates:

```
1 define([
2   'apple.tpl',
3   'apple-spinner.tpl'
4 ],function(appleTpl,appleSpinnerTpl){
5   return Backbone.View.extend({
6     initialize: function(){
7       this.model = new (Backbone.Model.extend({}));
8       this.model.on('change', this.render, this);
9       this.on('spinner',this.showSpinner, this);
10    },
11    template: _.template(appleTpl),
12    templateSpinner: appleSpinnerTpl,
13    loadApple:function(appleName){
14      this.trigger('spinner');
15      var view = this;
16      //we'll need to access that inside of a closure
17      setTimeout(function(){
18        //simulates real time lag when
19        //fetching data from the remote server
20        view.model.set(view.collection.where({
21          name:appleName
22        })[0].attributes);
23        },1000);
24    },
25    render: function(appleName){
26      var appleHtml = this.template(this.model);
27      $('body').html(appleHtml);
28    },
29    showSpinner: function(){
30      $('body').html(this.templateSpinner);
31    }
32  });
33});
```

The `apples.js` file:

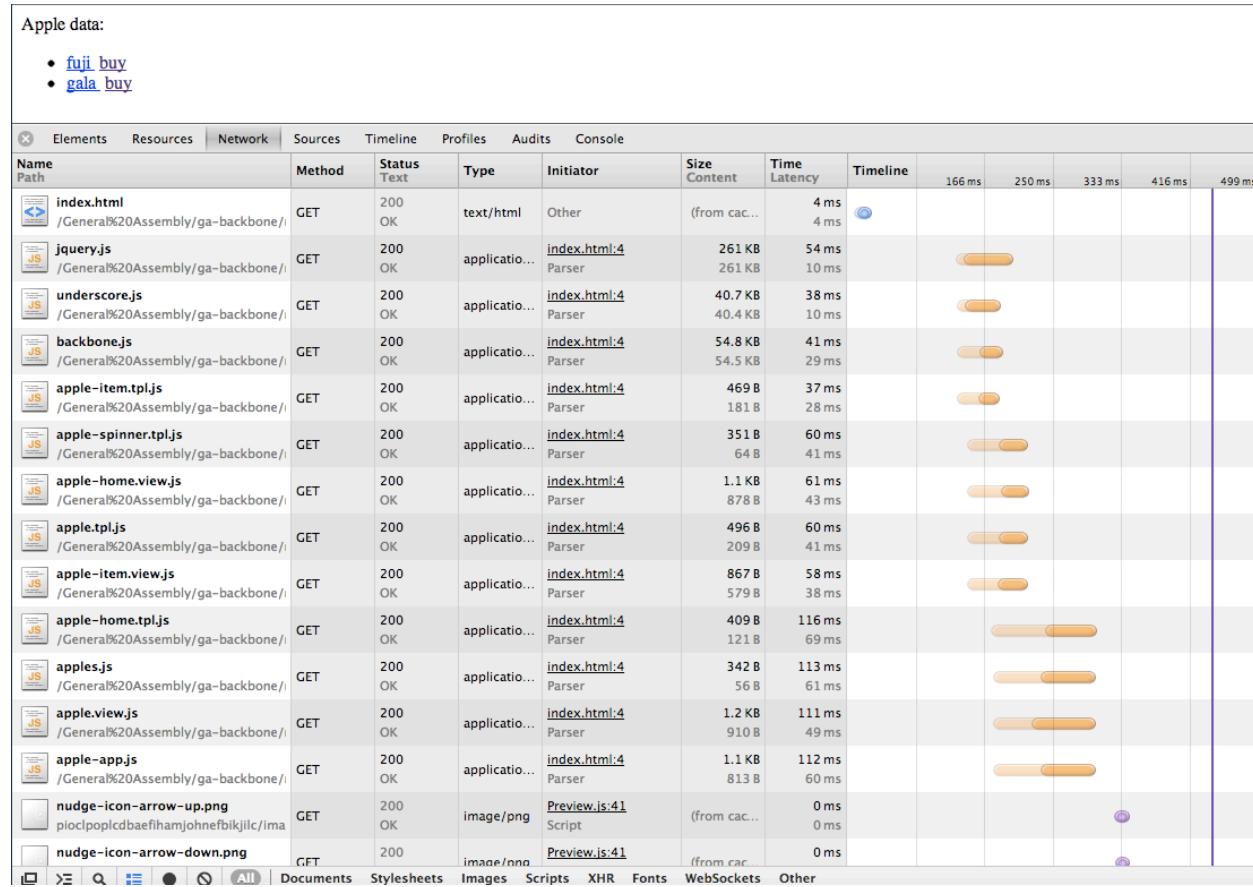
```

1 define(function(){
2     return Backbone.Collection.extend({})
3 });

```

I hope you can see the pattern by now. All of our code is split into the separate files based on the logic (e.g., view class, collection class, template). The main file loads all of the dependencies with the `require()` function. If we need some module in a non-main file, then we can ask for it in the `define()` method. Usually, in modules we want to return an object, e.g., in templates we return strings and in views we return Backbone View classes/objects.

Try launching the example under the [rpjs/backbone/amd](#)¹⁶ folder. Visually, there shouldn't be any changes. If you open the Network tab in the Developers Tool, you can see a difference in how the files are loaded. The old [rpjs/backbone/refactor/index.html](#)¹⁷ file loads our JS scripts in a serial manner while the new the new [rpjs/backbone/amd/index.html](#)¹⁸ file loads them in parallel.



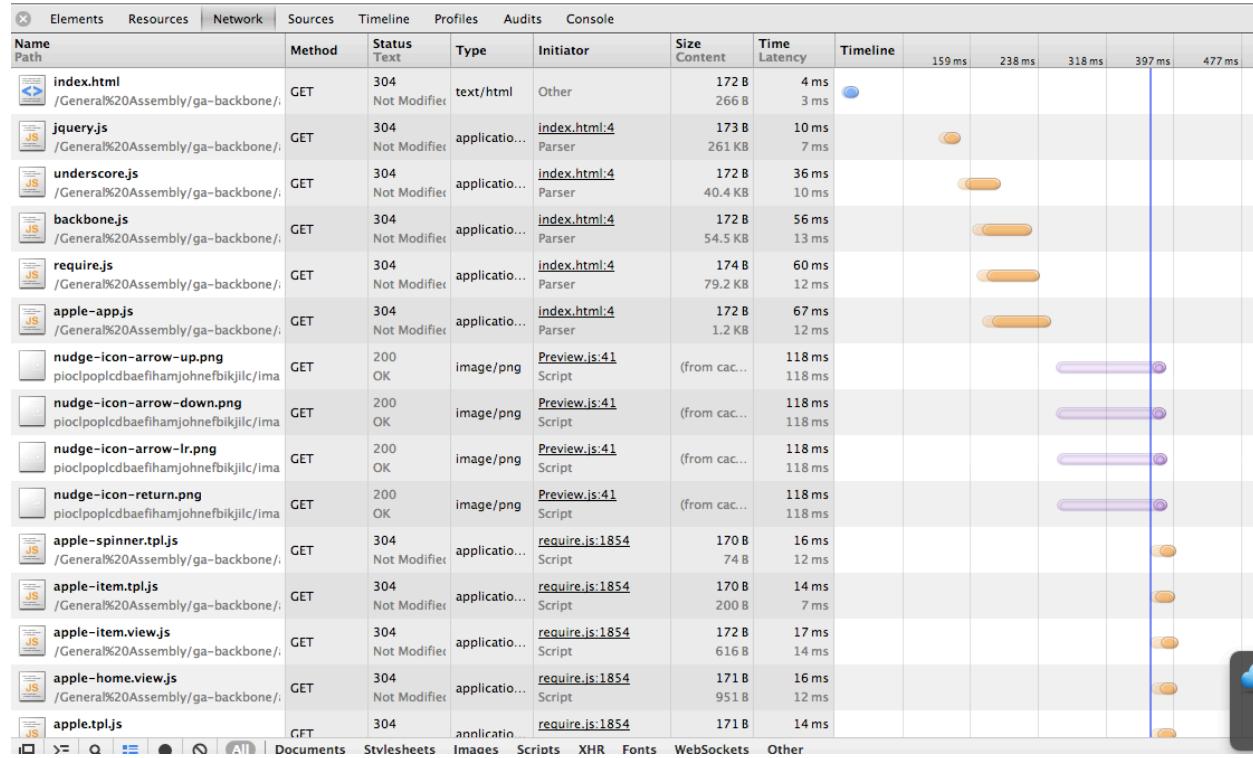
¹⁶<https://github.com/azat-co/rpjs/tree/master/backbone/amd>

¹⁷<https://github.com/azat-co/rpjs/blob/master/backbone/refactor/index.html>

¹⁸<https://github.com/azat-co/rpjs/blob/master/backbone/amd/index.html>

Apple data:

- [fuji_buy](#)
- [gala_buy](#)



The new rpjs/backbone/amd/index.html file

Require.js has a lot of configuration options which are defined through `requirejs.config()` call in a top level of an HTML page. More information can be found at requirejs.org/docs/api.html#config¹⁹.

Let's add a bust parameter to our example. The bust argument will be appended to the URL of each file preventing a browser from caching the files. Perfect for development and terrible for production. :-)

Add this to the `apple-app.js` file in front of everything else:

```

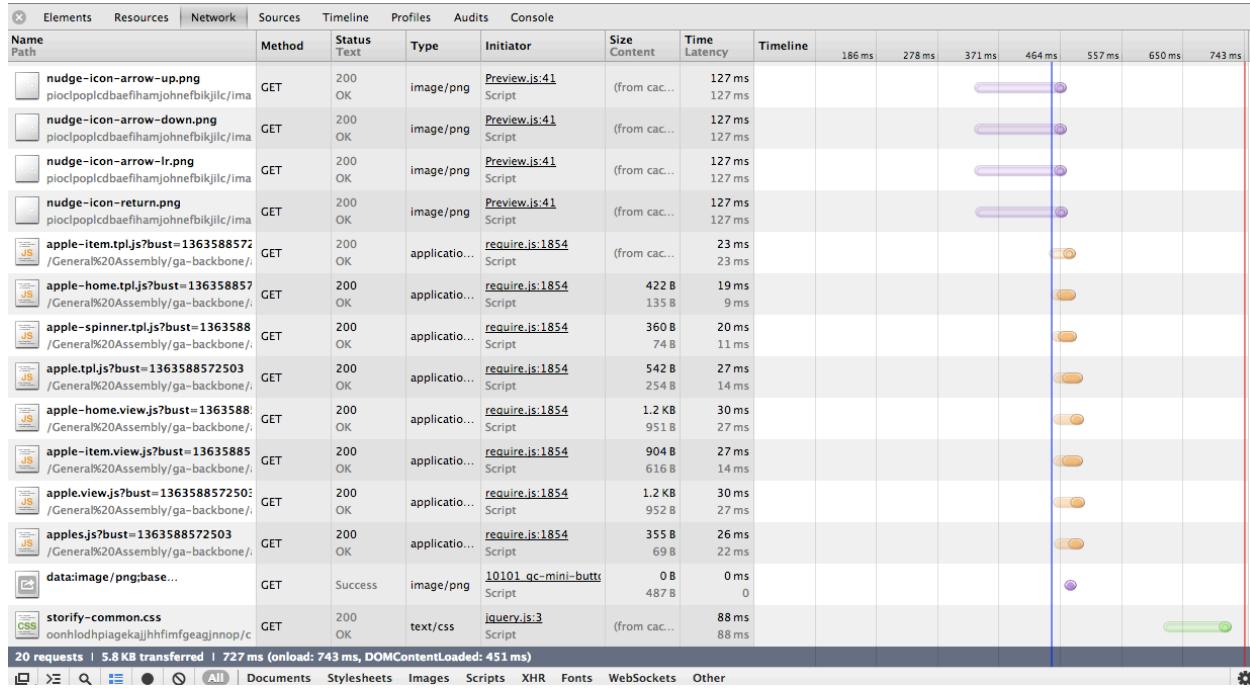
1  requirejs.config({
2    urlArgs: "bust=" + (new Date()).getTime()
3  });
4  require([
5    ...

```

¹⁹<http://requirejs.org/docs/api.html#config>

Apple data:

- [fuji_buy](#)
- [gala_buy](#)



Network Tab with bust parameter added

Please note that each file request now has status 200 instead of 304 (not modified).

4.7 Require.js for Production

We'll use the Node Package Manager (NPM) to install the `requirejs` library (it's not a typo; there's no period in the name). In your project folder, run this command in a terminal:

```
1 $ npm install requirejs
```

Or add `-g` for global installation:

```
1 $ npm install -g requirejs
```

Create a file `app.build.js`:

```
1  ({  
2      appDir: "./js",  
3      baseUrl: "./",  
4      dir: "build",  
5      modules: [  
6          {  
7              name: "apple-app"  
8          }  
9      ]  
10 })
```

Move the script files under the `js` folder (`appDir` property). The build files will be placed under the `build` folder (`dir` parameter). For more information on the build file, check out this *extensive* example with comments: <https://github.com/jrburke/r.js/blob/master/build/example.build.js>.

Now everything should be ready for building one gigantic JavaScript file, which will have all of our dependencies/modules:

```
1  $ r.js -o app.build.js
```

or

```
1  $ node_modules/requirejs/bin/r.js -o app.build.js
```

You should get a list of the `r.js` processed files.

```
Uglifying file: /Users/azat/Documents/Development/General Assembly/ga-backbone/r/build/apple-app.js
Uglifying file: /Users/azat/Documents/Development/General Assembly/ga-backbone/r/build/apple-home.tpl.js
Uglifying file: /Users/azat/Documents/Development/General Assembly/ga-backbone/r/build/apple-home.view.js
Uglifying file: /Users/azat/Documents/Development/General Assembly/ga-backbone/r/build/apple-item.tpl.js
Uglifying file: /Users/azat/Documents/Development/General Assembly/ga-backbone/r/build/apple-item.view.js
Uglifying file: /Users/azat/Documents/Development/General Assembly/ga-backbone/r/build/apple-spinner.tpl.js
Uglifying file: /Users/azat/Documents/Development/General Assembly/ga-backbone/r/build/apple.tpl.js
Uglifying file: /Users/azat/Documents/Development/General Assembly/ga-backbone/r/build/apple.view.js
Uglifying file: /Users/azat/Documents/Development/General Assembly/ga-backbone/r/build/apples.js
Uglifying file: /Users/azat/Documents/Development/General Assembly/ga-backbone/r/build/backbone.js
Uglifying file: /Users/azat/Documents/Development/General Assembly/ga-backbone/r/build/jquery.js
toTransport skipping /Users/azat/Documents/Development/General Assembly/ga-backbone/r/build/node_modules/.bin/r.js: Error: Line 1: Unexpected token ILLEGAL
Error: Cannot parse file: /Users/azat/Documents/Development/General Assembly/ga-backbone/r/build/node_modules/.bin/r.js for comments. Skipping it. Error is:
Error: Line 1: Unexpected token ILLEGAL
toTransport skipping /Users/azat/Documents/Development/General Assembly/ga-backbone/r/build/node_modules/requirejs/bin/r.js: Error: Line 1: Unexpected token ILLEGAL
Error: Cannot parse file: /Users/azat/Documents/Development/General Assembly/ga-backbone/r/build/node_modules/requirejs/bin/r.js for comments. Skipping it. Error is:
Error: Line 1: Unexpected token ILLEGAL
Uglifying file: /Users/azat/Documents/Development/General Assembly/ga-backbone/r/build/node_modules/requirejs/require.js
Uglifying file: /Users/azat/Documents/Development/General Assembly/ga-backbone/r/build/require.js
Uglifying file: /Users/azat/Documents/Development/General Assembly/ga-backbone/r/build/underscore.js

apple-app.js
-----
apple-item.tpl.js
apple-home.tpl.js
apple-spinner.tpl.js
apple.tpl.js
apple-item.view.js
apple-home.view.js
apple.view.js
apples.js
apple-app.js

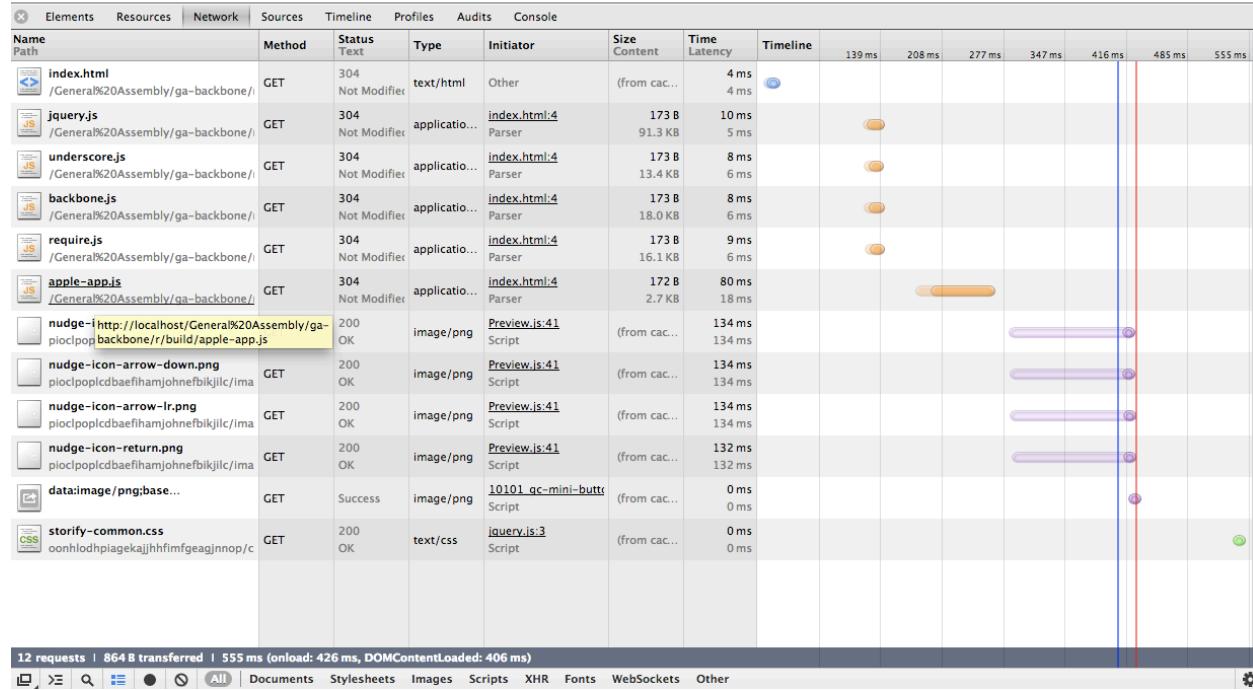
$ git:(master) ✘ $ node_modules/requirejs/bin/r.js -o app.build.js
```

A list of the r.js processed files.

Open **index.html** from the build folder in a browser window, and check if the Network Tab shows any improvement now with just one request/file to load.

Apple data:

- [fuji_buy](#)
- [gala_buy](#)



Performance improvement with one request/file to load.

For more information, check out the official r.js documentation at [requirejs.org/docs/optimization.html²⁰](http://requirejs.org/docs/optimization.html).

The example code is available under the [rpjs/backbone/r²¹](#) and [rpjs/backbone/r/build²²](#) folders.

For uglification of JS files (decreases the files' sizes), we can use the [Uglify²³](#) module. To install it with NPM, use:

```
1 $ npm install uglify-js
```

Then update the `app.build.js` file with the `optimize: "uglify2"` property:

²⁰<http://requirejs.org/docs/optimization.html>

²¹<https://github.com/azat-co/rpjs/tree/master/backbone/r>

²²<https://github.com/azat-co/rpjs/tree/master/backbone/r/build>

²³<https://github.com/mishoo/UglifyJS2>

```

1  ({
2      appDir: "./js",
3      baseUrl: "./",
4      dir: "build",
5      optimize: "uglify2",
6      modules: [
7          {
8              name: "apple-app"
9          }
10     ]
11 })

```

Run r.js with:

```
1 $ node_modules/requirejs/bin/r.js -o app.build.js
```

You should get something like this:

```

1 define("apple-item.tpl",[],function(){return'<a href="#apples/<%=name%>" targ\
2 et="_blank"><%=name%></a>&ampnbsp<a class="add-to-cart" href="#">buy\ \
3 </a>' }),define("apple-home.tpl",[],function(){return'Apple data:<ul c\ \
4 lass="apples-list"></ul><div class="cart-box"></div>' }),define("apple-spin\ \
5 ner.tpl",[],function(){return'' }),define("apple.tpl\
6 ",[],function(){return'<figure><figcaption><%= attributes.name %></figcaption>\ \
8 </figure>' }),define("apple-item.view",["apple-item.tpl"],function(e){r\ \
9 eturn Backbone.View.extend({tagName:"li",template:_.template(e),events:{"click .add-to-car\ \
10 t":"addToCart"},render:function(){this.$el.html(this.template(this.model.attributes))},add\ \
11 ToCart:function(){this.model.collection.trigger("addToCart",this.model)}))),define("apple\ \
12 -home.view",["apple-home.tpl","apple-item.view"],function(e,t){return Backbone.View.extend\ \
13 ({el:"body",listEl:".apples-list",cartEl:".cart-box",template:_.template(e),initialize:fun\ \
14 ction(){this.$el.html(this.template),this.collection.on("addToCart",this.showCart,this)}},s\ \
15 howCart:function(e){$(this.cartEl).append(e.attributes.name+"<br/>")},render:function(){vi\ \
16 ew=this,this.collection.each(function(e){var i=new t({model:e});i.render(),$(view.listEl).\ \
17 append(i.$el)}))}),define("apple.view",["apple.tpl","apple-spinner.tpl"],function(e,t){r\ \
18 eturn Backbone.View.extend({initialize:function(){this.model=new Backbone.Model.extend({})}\ \
19 ),this.model.on("change",this.render,this),this.on("spinner",this.showSpinner,this)},templ\ \
20 ate:_.template(e),templateSpinner:t,loadApple:function(e){this.trigger("spinner");var t=th\ \
21 is;setTimeout(function(){t.model.set(t.collection.where({name:e})[0].attributes)},1e3),re\ \
22 render:function(){var e=this.template(this.model);$( "body" ).html(e),showSpinner():\ \
23 $($("body").html(this.templateSpinner)))}),define("apples",[],function(){return Backbone.Co\ \
24 llection.extend({})),requirejs.config({urlArgs:"bust="+new Date().getTime()}),require(["a\ \
25 pple-item.tpl","apple-home.tpl","apple-spinner.tpl","apple.tpl","apple-item.view","apple-h\ \
26 ome.view","apple.view","apples"],function(e,t,i,n,a,l,p,o){var r,s=[{name:"fuji",url:"img/\ \
27 "}],this.loadApple(e,t,i,n,a,l,p,o),this.showCart(s),this.showSpinner()},this),this.r\ \
28 eadystatechange:function(e){if(e.type=="load")this.loadApple(e.target)},this.on("click .add-to-car\ \
29 t",function(e){var t=e.target;this.addToCart(t)},this),this.on("click .showCart",function(e){\ \
30 var t=e.target;this.showCart(t)},this),this.on("click .showSpinner",function(e){\ \
31 var t=e.target;this.showSpinner(t)},this),this.render()})})

```

```
27 fuji.jpg"},{name:"gala",url:"img/gala.jpg"}],c=Backbone.Router.extend({routes:{"": "home", "\\\n\n28 apples/:appleName": "loadApple"}, initialize:function(){var e=new o;e.reset(s),this.homeView\\\n29 =new l({collection:e}),this.appleView=new p({collection:e}),home:function(){this.homeView\\\n30 .render()},loadApple:function(e){this.appleView.loadApple(e)});$().ready(function\\\n31 (){r=new c,Backbone.history.start()})),define("apple-app",function(){});
```



Note

The file is not formatted on purpose to show how Uglify2 works. Without the line break escape symbols, the code is on one line. Also notice that variables and objects' names are shortened.

4.8 Super Simple Backbone Starter Kit

To jump-start your Backbone.js development, consider using [Super Simple Backbone Starter Kit²⁴](#) or similar projects:

- Backbone Boilerplate²⁵
- Sample App with Backbone.js and Twitter Bootstrap²⁶
- More Backbone.js tutorials [github.com/documentcloud/backbone/wiki/Tutorials%2C-blog-posts-and-example-sites²⁷](https://github.com/documentcloud/backbone/wiki/Tutorials%2C-blog-posts-and-example-sites).

²⁴<https://github.com/azat-co/super-simple-backbone-starter-kit>

²⁵<http://backboneboilerplate.com/>

²⁶<http://coenraets.org/blog/2012/02/sample-app-with-backbone-js-and-twitter-bootstrap/>

²⁷<https://github.com/documentcloud/backbone/wiki/Tutorials%2C-blog-posts-and-example-sites>

5 Backbone.js and Parse.com

Summary: illustration the Backbone.js uses with Parse.com and its JavaScript SDK on the modified Chat app; suggested list of additional features for the app.

“Java is to JavaScript what Car is to Carpet.” — [Chris Heilmann](#)¹

If you’ve written some complex client-side applications, you might have found that it’s challenging to maintain the spaghetti code of JavaScript callbacks and UI events. Backbone.js provides a lightweight yet powerful way to organize your logic into a Model-View-Controller (MVC) type of structure. It also has nice features like URL routing, REST API support, event listeners and triggers. For more information and step-by-step examples of building Backbone.js applications from scratch, please refer to the chapter *Intro to Backbone.js*.

You can download the Backbone.js library at [backbonejs.org](#)². Then, after you included it just like any other JavaScript file in the head (or body) of your main HTML file, you’ll be able to access the *Backbone* class. For example, to create the router:

```
1 var ApplicationRouter = Backbone.Router.extend({
2   routes: {
3     "" : "home",
4     "signup": "signup",
5     "*actions": "home"
6   },
7   initialize: function() {
8     this.headerView = new HeaderView();
9     this.headerView.render();
10    this.footerView = new FooterView();
11    this.footerView.render();
12  },
13  home: function() {
14    this.homeView = new HomeView();
15    this.homeView.render();
16  },
17  signup: function() {
18    ...
19  }
20});
```

¹<http://christianheilmann.com/>

²<http://backbonejs.org>

View, Models and Collections are created the same way:

```

1 HeaderView = Backbone.View.extend({
2   el: "#header",
3   template: '<div>...</div>',
4   events: {
5     "click #save": "saveMessage"
6   },
7   initialize: function() {
8     this.collection = new Collection();
9     this.collection.bind("update", this.render, this);
10    },
11   saveMessage: functiton() {
12     ...
13   },
14   render: function() {
15     $(this.el).html(_.template(this.template));
16   }
17 });
18
19 Model = Backbone.Model.extend({
20   url: "/api/item"
21   ...
22 });
23
24 Collection = Backbone.Collection.extend({
25   ...
26 });

```

For a more details on Backbone.js, please refer to the *Intro to Backbone.js* chapter.

5.1 Chat with Parse.com: JavaScript SDK and Backbone.js version

It's easy to see that if we keep adding more and more buttons like "DELETE", "UPDATE" and other functionalities, our system of asynchronous callback will grow more complicated. And we'll have to know when to update the view, i.e., the list of messages, based on whether or not there were changes to the data. The Backbone.js Model-View-Controller (MVC) framework can be used to make complex applications more manageable and easier to maintain.

If you felt comfortable with the previous example, let's build upon it with the use of the Backbone.js framework. Here we'll go step by step, creating a Chat application using Backbone.js and Parse.com JavaScript SDK. If you feel familiar enough with it, you could download the Super Simple Backbone Starter Kit at [github.com/azat-co/super-simple-backbone-starter-kit³](http://github.com/azat-co/super-simple-backbone-starter-kit). Integration with Backbone.js will allow for a straightforward implementation of user actions by binding them to asynchronous updates of the collection.

³<http://github.com/azat-co/super-simple-backbone-starter-kit>

The application is available under [rpjs/sdk⁴](#), but again you are encouraged to start from scratch and try to write your own code using the example only as a reference.

Here is the structure of Chat with Parse.com, JavaScript SDK and Backbone.js version:

```
1 /sdk
2   -index.html
3   -home.html
4   -footer.html
5   -header.html
6   -app.js
7   /css
8     -bootstrap-responsive.css
9     -bootstrap-responsive.min.css
10    -bootstrap.css
11    -bootstrap.min.css
12  /img
13    -glyphicon-halflings-white.png
14    -glyphicon-halflings.png
15  /js
16    -bootstrap.js
17    -bootstrap.min.js
18  /libs
19    -require.min.js
20    -text.js
```

Create a folder; in the folder create an **index.html** file with the following content skeleton:

```
1 <!DOCTYPE html>
2 <html lang="en">
3   <head>
4     ...
5   </head>
6   <body>
7     ...
8   </body>
9 </html>
```

Download the necessary libraries or hot-link them from Google API. Now include JavaScript libraries and Twitter Bootstrap stylesheets into the head element along with other important but not required *meta* elements.

⁴<https://github.com/azat-co/rpjs/tree/master/sdk>

```

1 <head>
2   <meta charset="utf-8" />
3   <title></title>
4   <meta name="description" content="" />
5   <meta name="author" content="" />
```

We need this for responsive behavior:

```

1 <meta name="viewport"
2   content="width=device-width, initial-scale=1.0" />
```

Hot-linked jQuery from Google API:

```

1 <script type="text/javascript"
2 src="http://ajax.googleapis.com/ajax/libs/jquery/1.7.2/jquery.min.js">
3 </script>
```

Nice to have Twitter Bootstrap plug-ins:

```
1 <script type="text/javascript" src="js/bootstrap.min.js"></script>
```

Parse JavaScript SDK is hot-linked from Parse.com CDN:

```

1 <script type="text/javascript"
2   src="http://www.parsecdn.com/js/parse-1.0.5.min.js">
3 </script>
```

Twitter Bootstrap CSS inclusion:

```

1 <link type="text/css"
2   rel="stylesheet"
3   href="css/bootstrap.min.css" />
4 <link type="text/css"
5   rel="stylesheet"
6   href="css/bootstrap-responsive.min.css" />
```

Our JS application inclusion:

```

1 <script type="text/javascript" src="app.js"></script>
2 </head>
```

Populate the **body** element with Twitter Bootstrap scaffolding (more about it in the *Basics* chapter):

```
1 <body>
2 <div class="container-fluid">
3   <div class="row-fluid">
4     <div class="span12">
5       <div id="header">
6         </div>
7       </div>
8     </div>
9   <div class="row-fluid">
10    <div class="span12">
11      <div id="content">
12        </div>
13      </div>
14    </div>
15   <div class="row-fluid">
16    <div class="span12">
17      <div id="footer">
18        </div>
19      </div>
20    </div>
21  </div>
22 </body>
```

Create an `app.js` file and put Backbone.js views inside:

- `headerView`: menu and app-common information
- `footerView`: copyrights and contact links
- `homeView`: home page content

We use Require.js syntax and shim plugin for HTML templates:

```
1 require([
2   'libs/text!header.html',
3   'libs/text!home.html',
4   'libs/text!footer.html'], function (
5     headerTpl,
6     homeTpl,
7     footerTpl) {
```

The application router with a single index route:

```

1  var ApplicationRouter = Backbone.Router.extend({
2    routes: {
3      "" : "home",
4      "*actions": "home"
5    },

```

Before we do anything else, we can initialize views which are going to be used across the app:

```

1  initialize: function() {
2    this.headerView = new HeaderView();
3    this.headerView.render();
4    this.footerView = new FooterView();
5    this.footerView.render();
6  },

```

This code takes care of the home route:

```

1  home: function() {
2    this.homeView = new HomeView();
3    this.homeView.render();
4  }
5);

```

The header Backbone View is attached to the `#header` element and uses the `headerTpl` template:

```

1  HeaderView = Backbone.View.extend({
2    el: "#header",
3    templateFileName: "header.html",
4    template: headerTpl,
5    initialize: function() {
6    },
7    render: function() {
8      console.log(this.template)
9      $(this.el).html(_.template(this.template));
10     }
11   });

```

To render the HTML, we use the `jQuery.html()` function:

```

1   FooterView = Backbone.View.extend({
2     el: "#footer",
3     template: footerTpl,
4     render: function() {
5       this.$el.html(_.template(this.template));
6     }
7   );

```

The home Backbone View definition uses the #content DOM element:

```

1   HomeView = Backbone.View.extend({
2     el: "#content",
3     // template: "home.html",
4     template: homeTpl,
5     initialize: function() {
6     },
7     render: function() {
8       $(this.el).html(_.template(this.template));
9     }
10    );

```

To start an app, we create a new instance and call Backbone.history.start():

```

1   app = new ApplicationRouter();
2   Backbone.history.start();
3 );

```

The full code of the app.js file:

```

1 require([
2   'libs/text!header.html',
3   //example of a shim plugin use
4   'libs/text!home.html',
5   'libs/text!footer.html'], function (
6     headerTpl,
7     homeTpl,
8     footerTpl) {
9   var ApplicationRouter = Backbone.Router.extend({
10     routes: {
11       "": "home",
12       "*actions": "home"
13     },
14     initialize: function() {
15       this.headerView = new HeaderView();

```

```
16      this.headerView.render();
17      this.footerView = new FooterView();
18      this.footerView.render();
19  },
20  home: function() {
21      this.homeView = new HomeView();
22      this.homeView.render();
23  }
24 });
25 HeaderView = Backbone.View.extend({
26   el: "#header",
27   templateFileName: "header.html",
28   template: headerTpl,
29   initialize: function() {
30   },
31   render: function() {
32     console.log(this.template)
33     $(this.el).html(_.template(this.template));
34   }
35 });
36
37 FooterView = Backbone.View.extend({
38   el: "#footer",
39   template: footerTpl,
40   render: function() {
41     this.$el.html(_.template(this.template));
42   }
43 });
44 HomeView = Backbone.View.extend({
45   el: "#content",
46   // template: "home.html",
47   template: homeTpl,
48   initialize: function() {
49   },
50   render: function() {
51     $(this.el).html(_.template(this.template));
52   }
53 });
54 app = new ApplicationRouter();
55 Backbone.history.start();
56});
```

The code above displays templates. All views and routers are inside, requiring the module to make sure that the templates are loaded before we begin to process them.

Here is what **home.html** looks like:

- A table of messages
- Underscore.js logic to output rows of the table
- A new message form

Let's use the Twitter Bootstrap library structure (with its responsive components) by assigning `row-fluid` and `span12` classes:

```

1 <div class="row-fluid" id="message-board">
2 <div class="span12">
3   <table class="table table-bordered table-striped">
4     <caption>Chat</caption>
5     <thead>
6       <tr>
7         <th class="span2">Username</th>
8         <th>Message</th>
9       </tr>
10      </thead>
11      <tbody>
```

This part has Underscore.js template instructions, which are just some JS code wrapped in `<%` and `%>` marks. `_.each()` is an iteration function from the UnderscoreJS library ([underscorejs.org/#each⁵](http://underscorejs.org/#each)), which does exactly what it sounds like — iterates through elements of an object/array:

```

1   <% if (models.length>0) {
2     _.each(models, function (value,key, list) { %>
3       <tr>
4         <td><%= value.attributes.username %></td>
5         <td><%= value.attributes.message %></td>
6       </tr>
7     <% });
8   }
9   else { %>
10   <tr>
11     <td colspan="2">No messages yet</td>
12   </tr>
13   <%} %>
14   </tbody>
15 </table>
16 </div>
17 </div>
```

For the new message form, we also use the `row-fluid` class and then add `input` elements:

⁵<http://underscorejs.org/#each>

```
1 <div class="row-fluid" id="new-message">
2   <div class="span12">
3     <form class="well form-inline">
4       <input type="text"
5         name="username"
6         class="input-small"
7         placeholder="Username" />
8       <input type="text" name="message"
9         class="input-small"
10        placeholder="Message Text" />
11       <a id="send" class="btn btn-primary">SEND</a>
12     </form>
13   </div>
14 </div>
```

The full code of the **home.html** template file:

```
1 <div class="row-fluid" id="message-board">
2   <div class="span12">
3     <table class="table table-bordered table-striped">
4       <caption>Chat</caption>
5       <thead>
6         <tr>
7           <th class="span2">Username</th>
8           <th>Message</th>
9         </tr>
10      </thead>
11      <tbody>
12        <% if (models.length>0) {
13          _.each(models, function (value,key, list) { %>
14            <tr>
15              <td><%= value.attributes.username %></td>
16              <td><%= value.attributes.message %></td>
17            </tr>
18          });
19        }
20        else { %>
21          <tr>
22            <td colspan="2">No messages yet</td>
23          </tr>
24        <%});%>
25      </tbody>
26    </table>
27  </div>
28 </div>
```

```

29 <div class="row-fluid" id="new-message">
30   <div class="span12">
31     <form class="well form-inline">
32       <input type="text"
33         name="username"
34         class="input-small"
35         placeholder="Username" />
36       <input type="text" name="message"
37         class="input-small"
38         placeholder="Message Text" />
39       <a id="send" class="btn btn-primary">SEND</a>
40     </form>
41   </div>
42 </div>
```

Now we can add the following components to:

- Parse.com collection,
- Parse.com model,
- Send/add message event,
- Getting/displaying messages functions.

Backbone compatible model object/class from Parse.com JS SDK with a mandatory `className` attribute (this is the name of the collection that will appear in the Data Browser of the Parse.com web interface):

```

1 Message = Parse.Object.extend({
2   className: "MessageBoard"
3});
```

Backbone compatible collection object from Parse.com JavaScript SDK that points to the model:

```

1 MessageBoard = Parse.Collection.extend ({
2   model: Message
3});
```

The home view needs to have click event listener on the “SEND” button:

```

1 HomeView = Backbone.View.extend({
2     el: "#content",
3     template: homeTpl,
4     events: {
5         "click #send": "sendMessage"
6     },

```

When we create homeView, let's also create a collection and attach event listeners to it:

```

1     initialize: function() {
2         this.collection = new MessageBoard();
3         this.collection.bind("all", this.render, this);
4         this.collection.fetch();
5         this.collection.on("add", function(message) {
6             message.save(null, {
7                 success: function(message) {
8                     console.log('saved ' + message);
9                 },
10                error: function(message) {
11                    console.log('error');
12                }
13            });
14            console.log('saved' + message);
15        })
16    },

```

The definition of saveMessage() calls for the “SEND” button click event:

```

1     saveMessage: function(){
2         var newMessageForm = $("#new-message");
3         var username = newMessageForm.
4             find('[name="username"]').
5             attr('value');
6         var message = newMessageForm.
7             find('[name="message"]').
8             attr('value');
9         this.collection.add({
10             "username": username,
11             "message": message
12         });
13     },
14     render: function() {
15         console.log(this.collection);
16         $(this.el).html(_.template(

```

```
17     this.template,
18     this.collection
19   ));
20 }
```

The end result of our manipulations in `app.js` might look something like this:

```
1  /*
2  Rapid Prototyping with JS is a JavaScript
3  and Node.js book that will teach you how to build mobile
4  and web apps fast. – Read more at
5  http://rapidprototypingwithjs.com.
6 */
7
8 require([
9   'libs/text!header.html',
10  'libs/text!home.html',
11  'libs/text!footer.html'],
12  function (
13    headerTpl,
14    homeTpl,
15    footerTpl) {
16  Parse.initialize(
17    "your-parse-app-id",
18    "your-parse-js-sdk-key");
19  var ApplicationRouter = Backbone.Router.extend({
20    routes: {
21      "": "home",
22      "*actions": "home"
23    },
24    initialize: function() {
25      this.headerView = new HeaderView();
26      this.headerView.render();
27      this.footerView = new FooterView();
28      this.footerView.render();
29    },
30    home: function() {
31      this.homeView = new HomeView();
32      this.homeView.render();
33    }
34  });
35
36  HeaderView = Backbone.View.extend({
37    el: "#header",
38    templateFileName: "header.html",
```

```
39     template: headerTpl,
40     initialize: function() {
41     },
42     render: function() {
43       $(this.el).html(_.template(this.template));
44     }
45   });
46
47 FooterView = Backbone.View.extend({
48   el: "#footer",
49   template: footerTpl,
50   render: function() {
51     this.$el.html(_.template(this.template));
52   }
53 });
54 Message = Parse.Object.extend({
55   className: "MessageBoard"
56 });
57 MessageBoard = Parse.Collection.extend ({
58   model: Message
59 });
60
61 HomeView = Backbone.View.extend({
62   el: "#content",
63   template: homeTpl,
64   events: {
65     "click #send": "saveMessage"
66   },
67
68   initialize: function() {
69     this.collection = new MessageBoard();
70     this.collection.bind("all", this.render, this);
71     this.collection.fetch();
72     this.collection.on("add", function(message) {
73       message.save(null, {
74         success: function(message) {
75           console.log('saved '+message);
76         },
77         error: function(message) {
78           console.log('error');
79         }
80       });
81       console.log('saved'+message);
82     })
83   },
84 }
```

```

84     saveMessage: function(){
85         var newMessageForm=$("#new-message");
86         var username =
87             newMessageForm
88                 .find(' [name="username"] ')
89                 .attr('value');
90         var message = newMessageForm
91             .find(' [name="message"] ')
92             .attr('value');
93         this.collection.add({
94             "username": username,
95             "message": message
96         });
97     },
98     render: function() {
99         console.log(this.collection)
100        $(this.el).html(_.template(
101            this.template,
102            this.collection
103        ));
104    }
105);
106
107 app = new ApplicationRouter();
108 Backbone.history.start();
109 });

```

The full source code of the Backbone.js and Parse.com Chat application is available under [rpjs/sdk⁶](#).

5.2 Deploying Chat to PaaS

Once you are comfortable that your front-end application works well locally, with or without a local HTTP server like MAMP or XAMPP, deploy it to Windows Azure or Heroku. In-depth deployment instructions are described in the *jQuery and Parse.com* chapter.

5.3 Enhancing Chat

In the last two examples, Chat had very basic functionality. You could enhance the application by adding more features.

Additional features for **intermediate** level developers:

⁶<https://github.com/azat-co/rpjs/tree/master/sdk>

- Sort the list of messages through the *updateAt* attribute before displaying it
- Add a “Refresh” button to update the list of messages
- Save the username after the first message entry in a run-time memory or in a session
- Add an up-vote button next to each message, and store the votes
- Add a down-vote button next to each message, and store the votes

Additional features for advanced level developers:

- Add a User collection
- Prevent the same user from voting multiple times
- Add user sign-up and log-in actions by using Parse.com functions
- Add a *Delete Message* button next to each message created by a user
- Add an *Edit Message* button next to each message created by a user

III Back-End Prototyping

6 Node.js and MongoDB

Summary: exhibition of the “Hello World” application in Node.js, list of some of its the most important core modules, NPM workflow, detailed commands for deployment of Node.js apps to Heroku and Windows Azure; MongoDB and its shell, run-time and database Chat applications; example of a test-driven development practice.

“Any fool can write code that a computer can understand. Good programmers write code that humans can understand.” — Martin Fowler¹

6.1 Node.js

6.1.1 Building “Hello World” in Node.js

To check if you have Node.js installed on your computer, type and execute this command in your terminal:

```
1 $ node -v
```

As of this writing, the latest version is 0.8.1. If you don’t have Node.js installed, or if your version is behind, you can download the latest version at nodejs.org/#download².

As usual, you could copy example code from rpjs/hello³ or write your own program from scratch. If you wish to do the latter, create a folder **hello** for your “Hello World” Node.js application. Then create file a **server.js** and line by line type the code below.

This will load the core **http** module for the server (more on the modules later):

```
1 var http = require('http');
```

We’ll need a port number for our Node.js server. To get it from the environment, or assign 1337 if the environment is not set, use:

```
1 var port = process.env.PORT || 1337;
```

This will create a server and a call-back function will contain the response handler code:

¹http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Martin_Fowler

²<http://nodejs.org/#download>

³<https://github.com/azat-co/rpjs/tree/master/hello>

```
1 var server = http.createServer(function (req, res) {
```

To set the right header and status code, use:

```
1 res.writeHead(200, {'Content-Type': 'text/plain'});
```

To output “Hello World” with the line end symbol, use:

```
1 res.end('Hello World\n');
2});
```

To set a port and display the address of the server and the port number, use:

```
1 server.listen(port, function() {
2   console.log('Server is running at %s:%s',
3   server.address().address, server.address().port);
4});
```

From the folder in which you have *server.js*, launch in your terminal the following command:

```
1 $ node server.js
```

Open [localhost:1337⁴](http://localhost:1337) or [127.0.0.1:1337⁵](http://127.0.0.1:1337) or any other address you see in the terminal as a result of `console.log()` function, and you should see “Hello World” in a browser. To shut down the server, press Control + C.



Note

The name of the main file could be different from *server.js*, e.g., *index.js* or *app.js*. In case you need to launch the *app.js* file, just use `$ node app.js`.

6.1.2 Node.js Core Modules

Unlike other programming technologies, Node.js doesn’t come with a heavy standard library. The core modules of node.js are a bare minimum and the rest can be cherry-picked via the Node Package Manager (NPM) registry. The main core modules, classes, methods and events include:

- [http⁶](#)
- [util⁷](#)

⁴<http://localhost:1337/>

⁵<http://127.0.0.1:1337/>

⁶http://nodejs.org/api/http.html#http_http

⁷<http://nodejs.org/api/util.html>

- [querystring⁸](#)
- [url⁹](#)
- [fs¹⁰](#)

[http¹¹](#)

This is the main module responsible for Node.js HTTP server. Here are the main methods:

- `http.createServer()`: returns a new web server object
- `http.listen()`: begins accepting connections on the specified port and hostname
- `http.createClient()`: node app can be a client and make requests to other servers
- `http.ServerRequest()`: incoming requests are passed to request handlers
 - `data`: emitted when a piece of the message body is received
 - `end`: emitted exactly once for each request
 - `request.method()`: the request method as a string
 - `request.url()`: request URL string
- `http.ServerResponse()`: this object is created internally by an HTTP server — not by the user, and used as an output of request handlers
 - `response.writeHead()`: sends a response header to the request
 - `response.write()`: sends a response body * `response.end()`: sends and ends a response body

[util¹²](#)

This module provides utilities for debugging. Some of the methods include:

- `util.inspect()`: Return a string representation of an object, which is useful for debugging

[querystring¹³](#)

This module provides utilities for dealing with query strings. Some of the methods include:

- `querystring.stringify()`: Serialize an object to a query string
- `querystring.parse()`: Deserialize a query string to an object

[url¹⁴](#)

This module has utilities for URL resolution and parsing. Some of the methods include:

- `parse()`: Take a URL string, and return an object

⁸<http://nodejs.org/api/querystring.html>

⁹<http://nodejs.org/api/url.html>

¹⁰<http://nodejs.org/api/fs.html>

¹¹http://nodejs.org/api/http.html#http_http

¹²<http://nodejs.org/api/util.html>

¹³<http://nodejs.org/api/querystring.html>

¹⁴<http://nodejs.org/api/url.html>

fs¹⁵

fs handles file system operations such as reading and writing to/from files. There are synchronous and asynchronous methods in the library. Some of the methods include:

- `fs.readFile()`: reads file asynchronously
- `fs.writeFile()`: writes data to file asynchronously

There is no need to install or download core modules. To include them in your application, all you need is to follow the syntax:

```
1 var http = require('http');
```

The lists of non-core modules can be found at:

- [npmjs.org¹⁶](http://npmjs.org): Node Package Manager registry
- [GitHub hosted list¹⁷](https://github.com/joyent/node/wiki/Modules): list of Node.js modules maintained by Joyent
- [nodetoolbox.com¹⁸](http://nodetoolbox.com): registry based on stats
- [Nipster¹⁹](http://nipster.eirikb.github.com/): NPM search tool for Node.js
- [Node Tracking²⁰](http://node-tracking.org/): registry based on GitHub stats

If you would like to know how to code your own modules, take a look at the article [Your first Node.js module²¹](#).

6.1.3 Node Package Manager

Node Package Manager, or NPM, manages dependencies and installs modules for you. Node.js installation comes with NPM, whose website is [npmjs.org²²](http://npmjs.org).

`package.json` contains meta information about our Node.js application such as a version number, author name and, most importantly, what dependencies we use in the application. All of that information is in the JSON formatted object, which is read by NPM.

If you would like to install packages and dependencies specified in `package.json`, type:

```
1 $ npm install
```

A typical `package.json` file might look like this:

¹⁵<http://nodejs.org/api/fs.html>

¹⁶<https://npmjs.org>

¹⁷<https://github.com/joyent/node/wiki/Modules>

¹⁸<http://nodetoolbox.com/>

¹⁹<http://eirikb.github.com/nipster/>

²⁰<http://nodejsmodules.org>

²¹<http://cnrnr.me/blog/2012/05/27/your-first-node-dot-js-module/>

²²<http://npmjs.org/>

```

1  {
2    "name": "Blerg",
3    "description": "Blerg blerg blerg.",
4    "version": "0.0.1",
5    "author": {
6      "name": "John Doe",
7      "email": "john.doe@gmail.com"
8    },
9    "repository": {
10      "type": "git",
11      "url": "http://github.com/johndoe/blerg.git"
12    },
13    "engines": [
14      "node >= 0.6.2"
15    ],
16    "license": "MIT",
17    "dependencies": {
18      "express": ">= 2.5.6",
19      "mustache": "0.4.0",
20      "commander": "0.5.2"
21    },
22    "bin": {
23      "blerg": "./cli.js"
24    }
25  }

```

To update a package to its current latest version, or the latest version that is allowable by the version specification defined in `package.json`, use:

```
1 $ npm update name-of-the-package
```

Or for single module installation:

```
1 $ npm install name-of-the-package
```

The only module used in the examples — and which does not belong to the core Node.js package — is `mongodb`. We'll install it later in the book.

Heroku will need `package.json` to run NPM on the server.

For more information on NPM, take a look at the article [Tour of NPM²³](#).

6.1.4 Deploying “Hello World” to PaaS

For Heroku and Windows Azure deployment, we'll need a Git repository. To create it from the root of your project, type the following command in your terminal:

²³<http://tobyho.com/2012/02/09/tour-of-npm/>

```
1 $ git init
```

Git will create a hidden `.git` folder. Now we can add files and make the first commit:

```
1 $ git add .
2 $ git commit -am "first commit"
```



Tip

To view hidden files on the Mac OS X Finder app, execute this command in a terminal window:
`defaults write com.apple.finder AppleShowAllFiles -bool true`. To change the flag back to hidden:
`defaults write com.apple.finder AppleShowAllFiles -bool false`.

6.1.5 Deploying to Windows Azure

In order to deploy our “Hello World” application to Windows Azure, we must add Git **remote**. You could copy the URL from Windows Azure Portal, under Web Site, and use it with this command:

```
1 $ git remote add azure yourURL
```

Now we should be able to make a push with this command:

```
1 $ git push azure master
```

If everything went okay, you should see success logs in the terminal and “Hello World” in the browser of your Windows Azure Web Site URL.

To push changes, just execute:

```
1 $ git add .
2 $ git commit -m "changing to hello azure"
3 $ git push azure master
```

A more meticulous guide can be found in the tutorial [Build and deploy a Node.js web site to Windows Azure](#)²⁴.

6.1.6 Deploying to Heroku

For Heroku deployment, we need to create 2 extra files: **Procfile** and **package.json**. You could get the source code from [rpjs/hello](#)²⁵ or write your own one.

The structure of the “Hello World” application looks like this:

²⁴[http://www.windowsazure.com/en-us/develop/nodejs/tutorials/create-a-website-\(mac\)/](http://www.windowsazure.com/en-us/develop/nodejs/tutorials/create-a-website-(mac)/)

²⁵<https://github.com/azat-co/rpjs/tree/master/hello>

```

1 /hello
2   -package.json
3   -Procfile
4   -server.js

```

Procfile is a mechanism for declaring what commands are run by your application's dynos on the Heroku platform. Basically, it tells Heroku what processes to run. Procfile has only one line in this case:

```
1 web: node server.js
```

For this example, we keep `package.json` simple:

```

1 {
2   "name": "node-example",
3   "version": "0.0.1",
4   "dependencies": {
5     },
6   "engines": {
7     "node": ">=0.6.x"
8   }
9 }

```

After we have all of the files in the project folder, we can use Git to deploy the application. The commands are pretty much the same as with Windows Azure except that we need to add Git remote, and create Cedar stack with:

```
1 $ heroku create
```

After it's done, we push and update with:

```

1 $ git push heroku master
2 $ git add .
3 $ git commit -am "changes"
4 $ git push heroku master

```

If everything went okay, you should see success logs in the terminal and "Hello World" in the browser of your Heroku app URL.

6.2 Chat: Run-Time Memory Version

The first version of the Chat back-end application will store messages only in run-time memory storage for the sake of [KISS²⁶](#). That means that each time we start/reset the server, the data will be lost.

We'll start with a simple test case first to illustrate the Test-Driven Development approach. The full code is available under the [rpjs/test²⁷](#) folder.

²⁶http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/KISS_principle

²⁷<https://github.com/azat-co/rpjs/tree/master/test>

6.3 Test Case for Chat

We should have two methods:

1. Get all of the messages as an array of JSON objects for the GET /message endpoint using the `getMessages()` method
2. Add a new message with properties `name` and `message` for POST /messages route via the `addMessage()` function

We'll start by creating an empty `mb-server.js` file. After it's there, let's switch to tests and create the `test.js` file with the following content:

```

1  var http = require('http');
2  var assert = require('assert');
3  var querystring = require('querystring');
4  var util = require('util');
5
6  var messageBoard = require('../mb-server');
7
8  assert.deepEqual('[{"name": "John", "message": "hi"}]', 
9    messageBoard.getMessages());
10 assert.deepEqual ('{"name": "Jake", "message": "gogo"}', 
11   messageBoard.addMessage ("name=Jake&message=gogo"));
12 assert.deepEqual('[{"name": "John", "message": "hi"}, {"name": "Jake", "message": "gogo"}]', 
13   messageBoard.getMessages("name=Jake&message=gogo"));

```

Please keep in mind that, this is a very simplified comparison of strings and not JavaScript objects. So every space, quote and case matters. You could make the comparison “smarter” by parsing a string into a JSON object with:

```
1  JSON.parse(str);
```

For testing our assumptions, we use core the Node.js module `assert`²⁸. It provides a bunch of useful methods like `equal()`, `deepEqual()`, etc.

More advanced libraries include alternative interfaces with TDD and/or BDD approaches:

- [Should](#)²⁹
- [Expect](#)³⁰

²⁸<http://nodejs.org/api/assert.html>

²⁹<https://github.com/visionmedia/should.js/>

³⁰<https://github.com/LearnBoost/expect.js/>

For more Test-Driven Development and cutting-edge automated testing, you could use the following libraries and modules:

- [Mocha³¹](#)
- [NodeUnit³²](#)
- [Jasmine³³](#)
- [Vows³⁴](#)
- [Chai³⁵](#)

You could copy the “Hello World” script into the `mb-server.js` file for now or even keep it empty. If we run `test.js` by the terminal command:

```
1 $ node test.js
```

We should see an error. Probably something like this one:

```
1 TypeError: Object #<Object> has no method 'getMessages'
```

That’s totally fine, because we haven’t written `getMessages()` method yet. So let’s do it and make our application more useful by adding two new methods: to get the list of the messages for Chat and to add a new message to the collection.

mb-server.js file with global `exports` object:

```
1 exports.getMessages = function() {
2   return JSON.stringify(messages);
3 };
4 exports.addMessage = function (data){
5   messages.push(querystring.parse(data));
6   return JSON.stringify(querystring.parse(data));
7 };
```

So far, nothing fancy, right? To store the list of messages, we’ll use an array:

³¹<http://visionmedia.github.com/mocha/>

³²<https://github.com/caolan/nodeunit>

³³<http://pivotal.github.com/jasmine/>

³⁴<http://vowsjs.org/>

³⁵<http://chaijs.com/>

```
1 var messages=[];
2 //this array will hold our messages
3 messages.push({
4   "name": "John",
5   "message": "hi"
6 });
7 //sample message to test list method
```



Tip

Generally, fixtures like dummy data belong to the test/spec files and not to the main application codebase.

Our server code will look slightly more interesting. For getting the list of messages, according to REST methodology, we need to make a GET request. For creating/adding a new message, it should be a POST request. So in our `createServer` object, we should add `req.method()` and `req.url()` to check for an HTTP request type and a URL path.

Let's load the `http` module:

```
1 var http = require('http');
```

We'll need some of the handy functions from the `util` and `querystring` modules (to serialize and deserialize objects and query strings):

```
1 var util = require('util');
2 var querystring = require('querystring');
```

To create a server and expose it to outside modules (i.e., `test.js`):

```
1 exports.server=http.createServer(function (req, res) {
```

Inside of the request handler callback, we should check if the request method is POST and the URL is `messages/create.json`:

```
1 if (req.method == "POST" &&
2 req.url == "/messages/create.json") {
```

If the condition above is true, we add a message to the array. However, `data` must be converted to a string type (with encoding UTF-8) prior to the adding, because it is a type of Buffer:

```

1  var message = '';
2  req.on('data', function(data, message){
3    console.log(data.toString('utf-8'));
4    message = exports.addMessage(data.toString('utf-8'));

```

These logs will help us to monitor the server activity in the terminal:

```

1  })
2  console.log(util.inspect(message, true, null));
3  console.log(util.inspect(messages, true, null));

```

The output should be in a text format with a status of 200 (okay):

```

1  res.writeHead(200, {
2    'Content-Type': 'text/plain'
3  });

```

We output a message with a newly created object ID:

```

1  res.end(message);
2 }

```

If the method is GET and the URL is /messages/list.json output a list of messages:

```

1  if (req.method == "GET" &&
2    req.url == "/messages/list.json") {

```

Fetch a list of messages:

```

1  var body = exports.getMessages();

```

The response body will hold our output:

```

1  res.writeHead(200, {
2    'Content-Length': body.length,
3    'Content-Type': 'text/plain'
4  });
5  res.end(body);
6 }
7 else {

```

This sets the right header and status code:

```

1   res.writeHead(200, {
2     'Content-Type': 'text/plain'
3   });

```

In case it's neither of the two endpoints above, we output a string with a line-end symbol:

```

1   res.end('Hello World\n');
2 };
3 console.log(req.method);

1 }).listen(1337, "127.0.0.1");

```

Now, we should set a port and IP address of the server:

```
1 console.log('Server running at http://127.0.0.1:1337');
```

We expose methods for the unit testing in **test.js** (exports keyword), and this function returns an array of messages as a string/text:

```

1 exports.getMessages = function() {
2   return JSON.stringify(messages);
3 };

```

addMessage() converts a string into a JavaScript object with the `parse`/`deserializer` method from `querystring`:

```

1 exports.addMessage = function (data){
2   messages.push(querystring.parse(data));

```

Also returning a new message in a JSON-as-a-string format:

```

1   return JSON.stringify(querystring.parse(data));
2 };

```

Here is the full code of **mb-server.js**. It's also available at [rpjs/test](#)³⁶:

³⁶<https://github.com/azat-co/rpjs/tree/master/test>

```
1 var http = require('http');
2 //loads http module
3 var util = require('util');
4 //useful functions
5 var querystring = require('querystring');
6 //loads querystring module,
7 //we'll need it to serialize and
8 //deserialize objects and query strings
9
10 var messages=[];
11 //this array will hold our messages
12 messages.push({
13   "name": "John",
14   "message": "hi"
15 });
16 //sample message to test list method
17
18 exports.server=http.createServer(function (req, res) {
19   //creates server
20   if (req.method == "POST" &&
21     req.url == "/messages/create.json") {
22     //if method is POST and
23     //URL is messages/ add message to the array
24     var message = '';
25     req.on('data', function(data, message){
26       console.log(data.toString('utf-8'));
27       message = exports.addMessage(data.toString('utf-8'));
28       //data is type of Buffer and
29       //must be converted to string
30       //with encoding UTF-8 first
31       //adds message to the array
32     })
33     console.log(util.inspect(message, true, null));
34     console.log(util.inspect(messages, true, null));
35     //debugging output into the terminal
36     res.writeHead(200, {
37       'Content-Type': 'text/plain'
38     });
39     //sets the right header and status code
40     res.end(message);
41     //out put message, should add object id
42   }
43   if (req.method == "GET" &&
44     req.url == "/messages/list.json") {
45     //if method is GET and
```

```

46 //URL is /messages output list of messages
47 var body = exports.getMessages();
48 //body will hold our output
49 res.writeHead(200, {
50   'Content-Length': body.length,
51   'Content-Type': 'text/plain'
52 });
53 res.end(body);
54 }
55 else {
56   res.writeHead(200, {
57     'Content-Type': 'text/plain'
58   });
59   //sets the right header and status code
60   res.end('Hello World\n');
61 };
62 console.log(req.method);
63 //outputs string with line end symbol
64 }).listen(1337, "127.0.0.1");
65 //sets port and IP address of the server
66 console.log('Server running at http://127.0.0.1:1337/');
67
68 exports.getMessages = function() {
69   return JSON.stringify(messages);
70   //output array of messages as a string/text
71 };
72 exports.addMessage = function (data){
73   messages.push(querystring.parse(data));
74   //to convert string into
75   //JavaScript object we use parse/deserializer
76   return JSON.stringify(querystring.parse(data));
77   //output new message in JSON as a string
78 };

```

To check it, go to localhost:1337/messages/list.json³⁷. You should see an example message. Alternatively, you could use the terminal command:

```
1 $ curl http://127.0.0.1:1337/messages/list.json
```

To make the POST request by using a command line interface:

```
1 curl -d "name=BOB&message=test" http://127.0.0.1:1337/messages/create.json
```

³⁷<http://localhost:1337/messages/list.json>

And you should get the output in a server terminal window and a new message “test” when you refresh localhost:1337/messages/list.json³⁸. Needless to say, all three tests should pass.

Your application might grow bigger with more methods, URL paths to parse and conditions. That is where frameworks come in handy. They provide helpers to process requests and other nice things like static file support, sessions, etc. In this example, we intentionally didn’t use any frameworks like Express (<http://expressjs.com/>) or Restify (<http://mcavage.github.com/node-restify/>). Other notable Node.js frameworks:

- [Derby](#)³⁹: MVC framework making it easy to write real-time, collaborative applications that run in both Node.js and browsers
- [Express.js](#)⁴⁰: the most robust, tested and used Node.js framework
- [Restify](#)⁴¹: lightweight framework for REST API servers
- [Sails.js](#)⁴²: MVC Node.js framework
- [hapi](#)⁴³: Node.js framework built on top of Express.js
- [Connect](#)⁴⁴: a middleware framework for node, shipping with over 18 bundled middlewares and a rich selection of third-party middleware
- [GeddyJS](#)⁴⁵: a simple, structured MVC web framework for Node
- [CompoundJS](#)⁴⁶ (ex-RailswayJS): Node.JS MVC framework based on ExpressJS
- [Tower.js](#)⁴⁷: a full stack web framework for Node.js and the browser
- [Meteor](#)⁴⁸: open-source platform for building top-quality web apps in a fraction of the time

Ways to improve the application:

- Improve existing test cases by adding object comparison instead of a string one
- Move the seed data to **test.js** from **mb-server.js**
- Add test cases to support your front-end, e.g., up-vote, user log in
- Add methods to support your front-end, e.g., up-vote, user log in
- Generate unique IDs for each message and store them in a Hash instead of an Array
- Install Mocha and re-factor test.js so it uses this library

So far we’ve been storing our messages in the application memory, so each time the application is restarted, we lose it. To fix it, we need to add a persistence, and one of the ways is to use a database like MongoDB.

³⁸<http://localhost:1337/messages/list.json>

³⁹<http://derbyjs.com/>

⁴⁰<http://expressjs.com>

⁴¹<http://mcavage.github.com/node-restify/>

⁴²<http://sailsjs.org/>

⁴³<http://spumko.github.io/>

⁴⁴<http://www.senchalabs.org/connect/>

⁴⁵<http://geddyjs.org>

⁴⁶<http://compoundjs.com/>

⁴⁷<http://towerjs.org>

⁴⁸<http://meteor.com>

6.4 MongoDB

6.4.1 MongoDB Shell

If you haven't done so already, please install the latest version of MongoDB from mongodb.org/downloads⁴⁹. For more instructions, please refer to the [Setup, Database: MongoDB](#) section.

Now from the folder where you unpacked the archive, launch the **mongod** service with:

```
1 $ ./bin/mongod
```

You should be able to see information in your terminal and in the browser at localhost:28017⁵⁰.

For the MongoDB shell, or **mongo**, launch in a new terminal window (**important!**), and at the same folder this command:

```
1 $ ./bin/mongo
```

You should see something like this, depending on your version of the MongoDB shell:

```
1 MongoDB shell version: 2.0.6
2 connecting to: test
```

To test the database, use the JavaScript-like interface and commands **save** and **find**:

```
1 > db.test.save( { a: 1 } )
2 > db.test.find()
```

More detailed step-by-step instructions are available at [Setup, Database: MongoDB](#).

Some other useful MongoDB shell commands:

```
1 > help
2 > show dbs
3 > use board
4 > show collections
5 > db.messages.remove();
6 > var a = db.messages.findOne();
7 > printjson(a);
8 > a.message = "hi";
9 > db.messages.save(a);
10 > db.messages.find({});
11 > db.messages.update({name: "John"}, {$set: {message: "bye"}});
12 > db.messages.find({name: "John"});
13 > db.messages.remove({name: "John"});
```

⁴⁹<http://www.mongodb.org/downloads>

⁵⁰<http://localhost:28017>

A full overview of the MongoDB interactive shell is available at [mongodb.org: Overview - The MongoDB Interactive Shell⁵¹](http://mongodb.org/Overview+-+The+MongoDB+Interactive+Shell⁵¹).

6.4.2 MongoDB Native Driver

We'll use Node.js Native Driver for MongoDB (<https://github.com/christkv/node-mongodb-native>) to access MongoDB from Node.js applications. Full documentation is also available at <http://mongodb.github.com/node-mongodb-native/api-generated/db.html>.

To install MongoDB Native driver for Node.js, use:

```
1 $ npm install mongodb
```

More details are at <http://www.mongodb.org/display/DOCS/node.JS>.

Don't forget to include the dependency in the `package.json` file as well:

```
1 {
2   "name": "node-example",
3   "version": "0.0.1",
4   "dependencies": {
5     "mongodb": "",
6     ...
7   },
8   "engines": {
9     "node": ">=0.6.x"
10 }
11 }
```

Alternatively, for your own development you could use other mappers, which are available as an extension of the Native Driver:

- [Mongoskin⁵²](#): the future layer for node-mongodb-native
- [Mongoose⁵³](#): asynchronous JavaScript driver with optional support for modeling
- [Mongolia⁵⁴](#): lightweight MongoDB ORM/driver wrapper
- [Monk⁵⁵](#): Monk is a tiny layer that provides simple yet substantial usability improvements for MongoDB usage within Node.js

This small example will test if we can connect to local MongoDB instance from a Node.js script.

After we installed the library, we can include the `mongodb` library in our `db.js` file:

⁵¹<http://www.mongodb.org/display/DOCS/Overview+-+The+MongoDB+Interactive+Shell>

⁵²<https://github.com/guileen/node-mongoskin>

⁵³<http://mongoosejs.com/>

⁵⁴<https://github.com/masylum/mongolia>

⁵⁵<https://github.com/LearnBoost/monk>

```

1 var util = require('util');
2 var mongodb = require ('mongodb');
```

This is one of the ways to establish connection to the MongoDB server in which the db variable will hold reference to the database at a specified host and port:

```

1 var Db = mongodb.Db;
2 var Connection = mongodb.Connection;
3 var Server = mongodb.Server;
4 var host = '127.0.0.1';
5 var port = 27017;
6
7 var db=new Db ('test', new Server(host,port, {}));
```

To actually open a connection:

```

1 db.open(function(e,c){
2     //do something with the database here
3     // console.log (util.inspect(db));
4     console.log(db._state);
5     db.close();
6});
```

This code snippet is available under the [rpjs/db/db.js⁵⁶](#) folder. If we run it, it should output “connected” in the terminal. When you’re in doubt and need to check the properties of an object, there is a useful method in the **util** module:

```
1 console.log(util.inspect(db));
```

6.4.3 MongoDB on Heroku: MongoHQ

After you made your application that displays ‘connected’ work locally, it’s time to slightly modify it and deploy to the platform as a service, i.e., Heroku.

We recommend using the [MongoHQ add-on⁵⁷](#), which is a part of [MongoHQ⁵⁸](#) technology. It provides a browser-based GUI to look up and manipulate the data and collections. More information is available at <https://devcenter.heroku.com/articles/mongohq>.



Note

You might have to provide your credit card information to use MongoHQ even if you select the free version. You should not be charged, though.

⁵⁶<https://github.com/azat-co/rpjs/blob/master/db/db.js>

⁵⁷<https://addons.heroku.com/mongohq>

⁵⁸<https://www.mongohq.com/home>

In order to connect to the database server, there is a database connection URL (a.k.a. MongoHQ URL/URI), which is a way to transfer all of the necessary information to make a connection to the database in one string.

The database connection string MONGOHQ_URL has the following format:

```
1 mongodb://user:pass@server.mongohq.com/db_name
```

You could either copy the MongoHQ URL string from the Heroku website (and hard-code it) or get the string from the Node.js `process.env` object:

```
1 process.env.MONGOHQ_URL;
```

or

```
1 var connectionUri = url.parse(process.env.MONGOHQ_URL);
```



Tip

The global object `process` gives access to environment variables via `process.env`. Those variables conventionally used to pass database host names and ports, passwords, API keys, port numbers, and other system information that shouldn't be hard-coded into the main logic.

To make our code work both locally and on Heroku, we can use the logical OR operator `||` and assign a local host and port if environment variables are undefined:

```
1 var port = process.env.PORT || 1337;
2 var dbConnUrl = process.env.MONGOHQ_URL ||
3   'mongodb://@127.0.0.1:27017';
```

Here is our updated cross-environment ready `db.js` file:

```
1 var url = require('url')
2 var util = require('util');
3 var mongodb = require('mongodb');
4 var Db = mongodb.Db;
5 var Connection = mongodb.Connection;
6 var Server = mongodb.Server;
7
8 var dbConnUrl = process.env.MONGOHQ_URL ||
9   'mongodb://127.0.0.1:27017';
10 var host = url.parse(dbConnUrl).hostname;
11 var port = new Number(url.parse(dbConnUrl).port);
12
```

```
13 var db=new Db ('test', new Server(host,port, {}));
14 db.open(function(e,c){
15   // console.log (util.inspect(db));
16   console.log(db._state);
17   db.close();
18});
```

Following the modification of **db.js** by addition of **MONGOHQ_URL**, we can now initialize Git repository, create a Heroku app, add the MongoHQ add-on to it and deploy the app with Git.

Utilize the same steps as in the previous examples to create a new git repository:

```
1 git init
2 git add .
3 git commit -am 'initial commit'
```

Create the Cedar stack Heroku app:

```
1 $ heroku create
```

If everything went well you should be able to see a message that tell you the new Heroku app name (and URL) along with a message that remote was added. Having remote in your local git is crucial, you can always check a list of remote by:

```
1 git remote show
```

To install free MongoHQ on the existing Heroku app (add-ons work on a per app basis), use:

```
1 $ heroku addons:add mongohq:sandbox
```

Or log on to [addons.heroku.com/mongohq⁵⁹](https://addons.heroku.com/mongohq) with your Heroku credentials and choose MongoHQ Free for that particular Heroku app, if you know the name of that app.

If you get **db.js** and modified **db.js** files working, let's enhance by adding a HTTP server, so the 'connected' message will be displayed in the browser instead of the terminal window. To do so, we'll wrap the server object instantiation in a database connection callback:

⁵⁹<https://addons.heroku.com/mongohq>

```

1 ...
2 db.open(function(e,c){
3     // console.log (util.inspect(db));
4     var server = http.createServer(function (req, res) {
5         //creates server
6         res.writeHead(200, {'Content-Type': 'text/plain'});
7         //sets the right header and status code
8         res.end(db._state);
9         //outputs string with line end symbol
10    });
11    server.listen(port, function() {
12        console.log('Server is running at %s:%s '
13        , server.address().address
14        , server.address().port);
15        //sets port and IP address of the server
16    });
17    db.close();
18 });
19 ...

```

The final deployment-ready file `app.js` from [rpjs/db⁶⁰](#):

```

1 /*
2 Rapid Prototyping with JS is a JavaScript
3 and Node.js book that will teach you how to build mobile
4 and web apps fast. – Read more at
5 http://rapidprototypingwithjs.com.
6 */
7 var util = require('util');
8 var url = require('url');
9 var http = require('http');
10 var mongodb = require('mongodb');
11 var Db = mongodb.Db;
12 var Connection = mongodb.Connection;
13 var Server = mongodb.Server;
14 var port = process.env.PORT || 1337;
15 var dbConnUrl = process.env.MONGOHQ_URL ||
16   'mongodb://@127.0.0.1:27017';
17 var dbHost = url.parse(dbConnUrl).hostname;
18 var dbPort = new Number(url.parse(dbConnUrl).port);
19 console.log(dbHost + dbPort)
20 var db = new Db('test', new Server(dbHost, dbPort, {}));
21 db.open(function(e, c) {
22   // console.log (util.inspect(db));

```

⁶⁰<https://github.com/azat-co/rpjs/blob/master/db>

```

23 // creates server
24 var server = http.createServer(function(req, res) {
25     //sets the right header and status code
26     res.writeHead(200, {
27         'Content-Type': 'text/plain'
28     });
29     //outputs string with line end symbol
30     res.end(db._state);
31 });
32 //sets port and IP address of the server
33 server.listen(port, function() {
34     console.log(
35         'Server is running at %s:%s ',
36         server.address().address,
37         server.address().port);
38 });
39 db.close();
40 });

```

After the deployment you should be able to open the URL provided by Heroku and see the message ‘connected’.

Here is the manual on how to use MongoDB from Node.js code: mongodb.github.com/node-mongodb-native/api-articles/nodekoarticle1.html⁶¹.

Another approach is to use the MongoHQ Module, which is available at github.com/MongoHQ/mongohq-nodejs⁶².

This example illustrates a different use of the **mongodb** library by outputting collections and a document count. The full source code from [rpjz/db/collections.js](https://github.com/rpjz/db/blob/master/db/collections.js)⁶³:

```

1 var mongodb = require('mongodb');
2 var url = require('url');
3 var log = console.log;
4 var dbUri = process.env.MONGOHQ_URL || 'mongodb://localhost:27017/test';
5
6 var connectionUri = url.parse(dbUri);
7 var dbName = connectionUri.pathname.replace(/^\//, '');
8
9 mongodb.Db.connect(dbUri, function(error, client) {
10     if (error) throw error;
11
12     client.collectionNames(function(error, names){
13         if(error) throw error;
14

```

⁶¹<http://mongodb.github.com/node-mongodb-native/api-articles/nodekoarticle1.html>

⁶²<https://github.com/MongoHQ/mongohq-nodejs>

⁶³<https://github.com/azat-co/rpjz/blob/master/db/collections.js>

```
15  //output all collection names
16  log("Collections");
17  log("=====");
18  var lastCollection = null;
19  names.forEach(function(colData){
20      var colName = colData.name.replace(dbName + ".", '')
21      log(colName);
22      lastCollection = colName;
23  });
24  if (!lastCollection) return;
25  var collection = new mongodb.Collection(client, lastCollection);
26  log("\nDocuments in " + lastCollection);
27  var documents = collection.find({}, {limit:5});
28
29  //output a count of all documents found
30  documents.count(function(error, count){
31      log(" " + count + " documents(s) found");
32      log("=====");
33
34      // output the first 5 documents
35      documents.toArray(function(error, docs) {
36          if(error) throw error;
37
38          docs.forEach(function(doc){
39              log(doc);
40          });
41
42          // close the connection
43          client.close();
44      });
45  });
46 });
47 });
```

We've used a shortcut for `console.log()` with `var log = console.log;` and `return` as a control flow via `if (!lastCollection) return;`.

6.4.4 BSON

Binary JSON, or BSON, it is a special data type which MongoDB utilizes. It is like to JSON in notation, but has support for additional more sophisticated data types.



Warning

A word of caution about BSON: ObjectId in MongoDB is an equivalent to ObjectID in MongoDB Native Node.js Driver, i.e., make sure to use the proper case. Otherwise you'll get an error. More on the types: [ObjectId in MongoDB⁶⁴](#) vs [Data Types in MongoDB Native Node.js Drier⁶⁵](#). Example of Node.js code with `mongodb.ObjectID(): collection.findOne({_id: new ObjectID(idString)})`, `console.log` // ok. On the other hand, in the MongoDB shell, we employ: `db.messages.findOne({_id:ObjectId(idStr)})`;

6.5 Chat: MongoDB Version

We should have everything set up for writing the Node.js application which will work both locally and on Heroku. The source code is available under [rpjs/mongo⁶⁶](#). The structure of the application is simple:

```
1 /mongo
2   -web.js
3   -Procfile
4   -package.json
```

This is what `web.js` looks like; first we include our libraries:

```
1 var http = require('http');
2 var util = require('util');
3 var querystring = require('querystring');
4 var mongo = require('mongodb');
```

Then put out a magic string to connect to MongoDB:

```
1 var host = process.env.MONGOHQ_URL || "mongodb://@127.0.0.1:27017/twitter-clone";
2 //MONGOHQ_URL=mongodb://user:pass@server.mongohq.com/db_name
```



Note

The URI/URL format contains the optional database name in which our collection will be stored. Feel free to change it to something else, for example 'rpjs' or 'test'.

We put all the logic inside of an open connection in the form of a callback function:

⁶⁴<http://www.mongodb.org/display/DOCS/Object+IDs>

⁶⁵<https://github.com/mongodb/node-mongodb-native/#data-types>

⁶⁶<https://github.com/azat-co/rpjs/tree/master/mongo>

```

1 mongo.Db.connect(host, function(error, client) {
2   if (error) throw error;
3   var collection = new mongo.Collection(
4     client,
5     'messages');
6   var app = http.createServer(function(request, response) {
7     if (request.method === "GET" &&
8       request.url === "/messages/list.json") {
9       collection.
10      find().
11      toArray(function(error,results) {
12        response.writeHead(200,{
13          'Content-Type':'text/plain'
14        });
15        console.dir(results);
16        response.end(JSON.stringify(results));
17      });
18    };
19    if (request.method === "POST" &&
20      request.url === "/messages/create.json") {
21      request.on('data', function(data) {
22        collection.insert(
23          querystring.parse(data.toString('utf-8')),
24          {safe:true},
25          function(error, obj) {
26            if (error) throw error;
27            response.end(JSON.stringify(obj));
28          }
29        )
30      });
31    };
32  });
33  var port = process.env.PORT || 5000;
34  app.listen(port);
35 })

```



Note

We don't have to use additional words after the collection/entity name, i.e., instead of /messages/list.json and /messages/create.json it's perfectly fine to have just /messages for all the HTTP methods such as GET, POST, PUT, DELETE. If you change them in your application code make sure to use the updated CURL commands and front-end code.

To test via CURL terminal commands run:

```
1 curl http://localhost:5000/messages/list.json
```

Or open your browser at the <http://localhost:5000/messages/list.json> location.

It should give you an empty array: [] which is fine. Then POST a new message:

```
1 curl -d "username=BOB&message=test" http://localhost:5000/messages/create.json
```

Now we must see a response containing an ObjectId of a newly created element, for example: [{ "username": "BOB", "message": "id": "51edcad458624300000000001" }]. Your ObjectId might vary.

If everything works as it should locally, try to deploy it to Heroku.

To test the application on Heroku, you could use the same [CURL⁶⁷](#) commands, substituting `http://localhost/` or “`http://127.0.0.1`” with your unique Heroku app’s host/URL:

```
1 $ curl http://your-app-name.herokuapp.com/messages/list.json
2 $ curl -d "username=BOB&message=test"
3 http://your-app-name.herokuapp.com/messages/create.json
```

It’s also nice to double check the database either via Mongo shell: `$ mongo` terminal command and then use `twitter-clone` and `db.messages.find()`; or via [MongoHub⁶⁸](#), [mongoui⁶⁹](#), [mongo-express⁷⁰](#) or in case of MongoHQ through its web interface accessible at [heroku.com](#) website.

If you would like to use another domain name instead of `http://your-app-name.herokuapp.com`, you’ll need to do two things:

1. Tell Heroku your domain name:

```
1 $ heroku domains:add www.your-domain-name.com
```

2. Add the CNAME DNS record in your DNS manager to point to `http://your-app-name.herokuapp.com`.

More information on custom domains can be found at [devcenter.heroku.com/articles/custom-domains⁷¹](#).



Tip

For more productive and efficient development we should automate as much as possible, i.e., use tests instead of CURL commands. There is an article on the Mocha library in the BONUS chapter which, along with the superagent or request libraries, is a timesaver for such tasks.

⁶⁷<http://curl.haxx.se/docs/manpage.html>

⁶⁸<https://github.com/bububa/MongoHub-Mac>

⁶⁹<https://github.com/azat-co/mongoui>

⁷⁰<https://github.com/andzdroid/mongo-express>

⁷¹<https://devcenter.heroku.com/articles/custom-domains>

7 Putting It All Together

Summary: descriptions of different deployment approaches, final version of Chat application and its deployment.

“Debugging is twice as hard as writing the code in the first place. Therefore, if you write the code as cleverly as possible, you are, by definition, not smart enough to debug it.” — Brian W. Kernighan¹

Now, it would be good if we could put our front-end and back-end applications so they could work together. There are a few ways to do it:

- Different domains (Heroku apps) for front-end and back-end apps: make sure there are no cross-domain issues by using CORS or JSONP. This approach is covered in detail later.
- Same domain deployment: make sure Node.js process static resources and assets for front-end application — not recommended for serious production applications.

7.1 Different Domain Deployment

This is, so far, the best practice for the production environment. Back-end applications are usually deployed at the `http://app`. or `http://api`. subdomains.

One way to make a different domain deployment work is to overcome the same-domain limitation of AJAX technology with JSONP:

```
1 var request = $.ajax({  
2   url: url,  
3   dataType: "jsonp",  
4   data: {...},  
5   jsonpCallback: "fetchData",  
6   type: "GET"  
7 });
```

The other, and better, way to do it is to add the OPTIONS method, and special headers, which are called CORS, to the Node.js server app before the output:

¹http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Brian_Kernighan

```

1 ...
2 response.writeHead(200, {
3   'Access-Control-Allow-Origin': origin,
4   'Content-Type': 'text/plain',
5   'Content-Length': body.length
6 });
7 ...

```

or

```

1 ...
2 res.writeHead(200, {
3   'Access-Control-Allow-Origin': 'your-domain-name',
4   ...
5 });
6 ...

```

The need for the OPTIONS method is outlined in [HTTP access control \(CORS\)](#)². The OPTIONS request can be dealt with in the following manner:

```

1 ...
2 if (request.method==="OPTIONS") {
3   response.writeHead("204", "No Content", {
4     "Access-Control-Allow-Origin": origin,
5     "Access-Control-Allow-Methods":
6       "GET, POST, PUT, DELETE, OPTIONS",
7     "Access-Control-Allow-Headers": "content-type, accept",
8     "Access-Control-Max-Age": 10, // Seconds.
9     "Content-Length": 0
10   });
11   response.end();
12 };
13 ...

```

7.2 Changing Endpoints

Our front-end application used Parse.com as a replacement for a back-end application. Now we can switch to our own back-end replacing the endpoints (yes, it's that painless!). The front-end app source code is in the `rpjs/board`³ GitHub folder.

In the beginning of the `app.js` file, uncomment the first line for running locally, or replace the URL values with your Heroku or Windows Azure back-end application public URLs:

²https://developer.mozilla.org/en-US/docs/HTTP_access_control

³<https://github.com/azat-co/rpjs/tree/master/board>

```
1 // var URL = "http://localhost:5000/";
2 var URL ="http://your-app-name.herokuapp.com/";
```

As you can see, most of the code in `app.js` and the folder structure remained intact with the exception of replacing Parse.com models and collections with original Backbone.js ones:

```
1 Message = Backbone.Model.extend({
2   url: URL + "messages/create.json"
3 })
4 MessageBoard = Backbone.Collection.extend ({
5   model: Message,
6   url: URL + "messages/list.json"
7});
```

Those are the places where Backbone.js looks up for REST API URLs corresponding to the specific collection and model.

Here is the full source code of the `rpjs/board/app.js`⁴ file:

```
1 /*
2 Rapid Prototyping with JS is a JavaScript
3 and Node.js book that will teach you how to
4 build mobile and web apps fast. – Read more at
5 http://rapidprototypingwithjs.com.
6 */
7
8 // var URL = "http://localhost:5000/";
9 var URL = "http://your-app-name.herokuapp.com/";
10
11 require([
12   'libs/text!header.html',
13   'libs/text!home.html',
14   'libs/text!footer.html'],
15
16 function(
17 headerTpl,
18 homeTpl,
19 footerTpl) {
20
21   var ApplicationRouter = Backbone.Router.extend({
22     routes: {
23       "": "home",
24       "*actions": "home"
```

⁴<https://github.com/azat-co/rpjs/blob/master/board/app.js>

```
25 },
26 initialize: function() {
27   this.headerView = new HeaderView();
28   this.headerView.render();
29   this.footerView = new FooterView();
30   this.footerView.render();
31 },
32 home: function() {
33   this.homeView = new HomeView();
34   this.homeView.render();
35 }
36 });
37
38 HeaderView = Backbone.View.extend({
39   el: "#header",
40   templateFileName: "header.html",
41   template: headerTpl,
42   initialize: function() {},
43   render: function() {
44     \$(this.el).html(_.template(this.template));
45   }
46 });
47
48 FooterView = Backbone.View.extend({
49   el: "#footer",
50   template: footerTpl,
51   render: function() {
52     this.$el.html(_.template(this.template));
53   }
54 });
55 Message = Backbone.Model.extend({
56   url: URL + "messages/create.json"
57 })
58 MessageBoard = Backbone.Collection.extend({
59   model: Message,
60   url: URL + "messages/list.json"
61 });
62
63 HomeView = Backbone.View.extend({
64   el: "#content",
65   template: homeTpl,
66   events: {
67     "click #send": "saveMessage"
68   },
69 })
```

```

70     initialize: function() {
71       this.collection = new MessageBoard();
72       this.collection.bind("all", this.render, this);
73       this.collection.fetch();
74       this.collection.on("add", function(message) {
75         message.save(null, {
76           success: function(message) {
77             console.log('saved ' + message);
78           },
79           error: function(message) {
80             console.log('error');
81           }
82         });
83         console.log('saved' + message);
84       })
85     },
86     saveMessage: function() {
87       var newMessageForm = $("#new-message");
88       var username = newMessageForm.find('[name="username"]')
89         .attr('value');
90       var message = newMessageForm.find('[name="message"]')
91         .attr('value');
92       this.collection.add({
93         "username": username,
94         "message": message
95       });
96     },
97     render: function() {
98       console.log(this.collection)
99       $(this.el).html(_.template(
100         this.template,
101         this.collection
102       ));
103     }
104   );
105
106   app = new ApplicationRouter();
107   Backbone.history.start();
108 });

```

7.3 Chat Application

The back-end Node.js application source code is in the [rpjs/node⁵](https://github.com/azat-co/rpjs/tree/master/node) GitHub folder, which has this structure:

⁵<https://github.com/azat-co/rpjs/tree/master/node>

```
1 /node
2     -web.js
3     -Procfile
4     -package.json
```

Here is a source code of web.js, our Node.js application implemented with CORS headers:

```
1 /*
2  Rapid Prototyping with JS is a JavaScript
3  and Node.js book that will teach you how to build mobile
4  and web apps fast. – Read more at
5  http://rapidprototypingwithjs.com.
6 */
7
8 var http = require('http');
9 var util = require('util');
10 var querystring = require('querystring');
11 var mongo = require('mongodb');
12
13 var host = process.env.MONGOHQ_URL ||
14   "mongodb://localhost:27017/board";
15 //MONGOHQ_URL=mongodb://user:pass@server.mongohq.com/db_name
16
17
18 mongo.Db.connect(host, function(error, client) {
19   if (error) throw error;
20   var collection = new mongo.Collection(client, 'messages');
21   var app = http.createServer( function (request, response) {
22     var origin = (request.headers.origin || "*");
23     if (request.method=="OPTIONS") {
24       response.writeHead("204", "No Content", {
25         "Access-Control-Allow-Origin": origin,
26         "Access-Control-Allow-Methods": "GET, POST, PUT, DELETE,
27         OPTIONS",
28         "Access-Control-Allow-Headers": "content-type, accept",
29         "Access-Control-Max-Age": 10, // Seconds.
30         "Content-Length": 0
31       });
32       response.end();
33     };
34     if (request.method==="GET"&&
35       request.url==="/messages/list.json") {
36       collection.find().toArray(function(error,results) {
37         var body = JSON.stringify(results);
38         response.writeHead(200,{
```

```

39         'Access-Control-Allow-Origin': origin,
40         'Content-Type': 'text/plain',
41         'Content-Length': body.length
42     });
43     console.log("LIST OF OBJECTS: ");
44     console.dir(results);
45     response.end(body);
46   });
47 }
48 if (request.method === "POST" &&
49   request.url === "/messages/create.json") {
50   request.on('data', function(data) {
51     console.log("RECEIVED DATA:")
52     console.log(data.toString('utf-8'));
53     collection.insert(JSON.parse(data.toString('utf-8')),
54     {safe:true}, function(error, obj) {
55       if (error) throw error;
56       console.log("OBJECT IS SAVED: ")
57       console.log(JSON.stringify(obj))
58       var body = JSON.stringify(obj);
59       response.writeHead(200, {
60         'Access-Control-Allow-Origin': origin,
61         'Content-Type': 'text/plain',
62         'Content-Length': body.length
63     });
64     response.end(body);
65   })
66 })
67
68 );
69
70 });
71 var port = process.env.PORT || 5000;
72 app.listen(port);
73 }
```

7.4 Deployment

For your convenience, we have the front-end app in the [rpjs/board](#)⁶ folder and the back-end app with CORS under [rpjs/node](#)⁷. By now, you probably know what to do, but as a reference, below are the steps to deploy these examples to Heroku.

In the **node** folder execute:

⁶<https://github.com/azat-co/rpjs/tree/master/board>

⁷<https://github.com/azat-co/rpjs/tree/master/node>

```
1 $ git init
2 $ git add .
3 $ git commit -am "first commit"
4 $ heroku create
5 $ heroku addons:add mongohq:sandbox
6 $ git push heroku master
```

Copy the URL and paste it into the `board/app.js` file, assigning the value to the `URL` variable. Then, in `board` folder, execute:

```
1 $ git init
2 $ git add .
3 $ git commit -am "first commit"
4 $ heroku create
5 $ git push heroku master
6 $ heroku open
```

7.5 Same Domain Deployment

Same domain deployment is *not recommended* for serious production applications, because static assets are better served with web servers like nginx (not Node.js I/O engine), and separating API makes for less complicated testing, increased robustness, and quicker troubleshooting/monitoring. However, the same app/domain approach could be used for staging, testing, development environments and/or tiny apps.

This is an example of a static Node.js server:

```
1 var http = require("http"),
2     url = require("url"),
3     path = require("path"),
4     fs = require("fs")
5     port = process.argv[2] || 8888;
6
7     http.createServer(function(request, response) {
8
9         var uri = url.parse(request.url).pathname
10        , filename = path.join(process.cwd(), uri);
11
12     path.exists(filename, function(exists) {
13         if(!exists) {
14             response.writeHead(404, {
15                 "Content-Type": "text/plain"});
16             response.write("404 Not Found\n");
17             response.end();
18         return;
```

```
19      }
20
21      if (fs.statSync(filename).isDirectory())
22          filename += '/index.html';
23
24      fs.readFile(filename, "binary",
25          function(err, file) {
26              if(err) {
27                  response.writeHead(500,
28                      {"Content-Type": "text/plain"});
29                  response.write(err + "\n");
30                  response.end();
31                  return;
32              }
33              response.writeHead(200);
34              response.write(file, "binary");
35              response.end();
36          }
37      );
38  });
39 }).listen(parseInt(port, 10));
40
41 console.log("Static file server running at\n"+
42     " => http://localhost:" + port + "/\nCTRL + C to shutdown");
```



Note

Another, more elegant way is to use Node.js frameworks as Connect (<http://www.senchalabs.org/connect/static.html>), or Express (<http://expressjs.com/guide.html>); because there is a special **static** middleware for JS and CSS assets.

8 BONUS: Webapplog Articles

Summary: articles on the essence of asynchronicity in Node.js, TDD with Mocha; introduction to Express.js, Monk, Wintersmith, Derby frameworks/libraries.

“Don’t worry about failure; you only have to be right once.” — Drew Houston¹

For your convenience we included some of the Node.js posts from [Webapplog.com²](http://Webapplog.com) — a publicly accessible blog about web development — in this chapter.

8.1 Asynchronicity in Node

8.1.1 Non-Blocking I/O

One of the biggest advantages of using Node.js over Python or Ruby is that Node has a non-blocking I/O mechanism. To illustrate this, let me use an example of a line in a Starbucks coffeeshop. Let’s pretend that each person standing in line for a drink is a task, and everything behind the counter — cashier, register, barista — is a server or server application. Whether we order a cup of regular drip coffee, like Pike Place, or hot tea, like Earl Grey, the barista makes it. The whole line waits while that drink is made, and each person is charged the appropriate amount.

Of course, we know the aforementioned drinks (a.k.a., time-consuming bottlenecks) are easy to make; just pour the liquid and it’s done. But what about those fancy choco-mocha-frappe-latte-soy-decafs? What if everybody in line decides to order these time-consuming drinks? The line will be held up, and in turn, grow longer and longer. The manager of the coffeeshop will have to add more registers and put more baristas to work (or even stand behind the register him/herself).

This is not good, right? But this is how virtually all server-side technologies work, except Node.js, which is like a real Starbucks. When you order something, the barista yells the order to the other employee, and you leave the register. Another person gives their order while you wait for your state-of-the-art eye-opener in a paper cup. The line moves, the processes are executed asynchronously and without blocking the queue.

This is why Node.js blows everything else away (except maybe low-level C++) in terms of performance and scalability. With Node.js, you just don’t need that many CPUs and servers to handle the load.

¹http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Drew_Houston

²<http://webapplog.com>

8.1.2 Asynchronous Way of Coding

Asynchronicity requires a different way of thinking for programmers familiar with Python, PHP, C or Ruby. It's easy to introduce a bug unintentionally by forgetting to end the execution of the code with a proper `return` expression.

Here is a simple example illustrating this scenario:

```

1 var test = function (callback) {
2   return callback();
3   console.log('test') //shouldn't be printed
4 }
5
6 var test2 = function(callback){
7   callback();
8   console.log('test2') //printed 3rd
9 }
10
11 test(function(){
12   console.log('callback1') //printed first
13   test2(function(){
14     console.log('callback2') //printed 2nd
15   })
16 });

```

If we don't use `return callback()` and just use `callback()` our string `test2` will be printed (`test` is not printed).

```

1 callback1
2 callback2
3 tes2

```

For fun I've added a `setTimeout()` delay for the `callback2` string, and now the order has changed:

```

1 var test = function (callback) {
2   return callback();
3   console.log('test') //shouldn't be printed
4 }
5
6 var test2 = function(callback){
7   callback();
8   setTimeout(function(){
9     console.log('test2') //printed 2nd
10    }, 100)
11   test(function(){
12     console.log('callback1') //printed first
13   })
14 };

```

```

13  test2(function(){
14    setTimeout(function(){
15      console.log('callback2') //printed 3rd
16      },100)
17    })
18 });

```

Prints:

```

1 callback1
2 tes2
3 callback2

```

The last example illustrates that the two functions are independent of each other and run in parallel. The faster function will finish sooner than the slower one. Going back to our Starbucks examples, you might get your drink faster than the other person who was in front of you in the line. Better for people, and better for programs! :-)

8.2 MongoDB Migration with Monk

Recently one of our top users complained that his [Storify³](#) account was inaccessible. We've checked the production database, and it appears that the account might have been compromised and maliciously deleted by somebody using the user's account credentials. Thanks to a great MongoHQ service, we had a backup database in less than 15 minutes. There were two options to proceed with the migration:

1. Mongo shell script
2. Node.js program

Because Storify user account deletion involves deletion of all related objects — identities, relationships (followers, subscriptions), likes, stories — we've decided to proceed with the latter option. It worked perfectly, and here is a simplified version which you can use as a boilerplate for MongoDB migration (also at [gist.github.com/4516139⁴](#)).

Let's load all of the modules we need: [Monk⁵](#), [Progress⁶](#), [Async⁷](#), and MongoDB:

³<http://storify.com>

⁴<https://gist.github.com/4516139>

⁵<https://github.com/LearnBoost/monk>

⁶<https://github.com/visionmedia/node-progress>

⁷<https://github.com/caolan/async>

```

1 var async = require('async');
2 var ProgressBar = require('progress');
3 var monk = require('monk');
4 var ObjectId=require('mongodb').ObjectId;

```

By the way, Monk, made by [LeanBoost⁸](#), is a “tiny layer that provides simple yet substantial usability improvements for MongoDB usage within Node.js”.

Monk takes connection string in the following format:

```
1 username:password@dbhost:port/database
```

So we can create the following objects:

```

1 var dest = monk('localhost:27017/storify_localhost');
2 var backup = monk('localhost:27017/storify_backup');

```

We need to know the object ID which we want to restore:

```
1 var userId = ObjectId(YOUR-OBJECT-ID);
```

This is a handy `restore()` function which we can reuse to restore objects from related collections by specifying the query (for more on MongoDB queries, go to the post [Querying 20M-Record MongoDB Collection⁹](#)). To call it, just pass a name of the collection as a string, e.g., "stories" and a query which associates objects from this collection with your main object, e.g., `{userId: user.id}`. The progress bar is needed to show us nice visuals in the terminal:

```

1 var restore = function(collection, query, callback){
2   console.info('restoring from ' + collection);
3   var q = query;
4   backup.get(collection).count(q, function(e, n) {
5     console.log('found '+n+' '+collection);
6     if (e) console.error(e);
7     var bar = new ProgressBar('[:bar] :current/:total'
8       + ':percent :etas'
9       , { total: n-1, width: 40 })
10    var tick = function(e) {
11      if (e) {
12        console.error(e);
13        bar.tick();
14      }
15    else {

```

⁸<https://www.learnboost.com/>

⁹<http://www.webapplog.com/querying-20m-record-mongodb-collection/>

```
16         bar.tick();
17     }
18     if (bar.complete) {
19         console.log();
20         console.log('restoring '+collection+' is completed');
21         callback();
22     }
23 };
24 if (n>0){
25     console.log('adding '+ n+ ' '+collection);
26     backup.get(collection).find(q, {
27         stream: true
28     }).each(function(element) {
29         dest.get(collection).insert(element, tick);
30     });
31 } else {
32     callback();
33 }
34 });
35 }
```

Now we can use `async` to call the `restore()` function mentioned above:

```
1 async.series({
2     restoreUser: function(callback){ // import user element
3         backup.get('users').find({_id:userId}, {
4             stream: true, limit: 1
5         }).each(function(user) {
6             dest.get('users').insert(user, function(e){
7                 if (e) {
8                     console.log(e);
9                 }
10                else {
11                    console.log('resored user: '+ user.username);
12                }
13                callback();
14            });
15        });
16    },
17
18    restoreIdentity: function(callback){
19        restore('identities',{
20            userid:userId
21        }, callback);
22    },
23 }
```

```

23
24     restoreStories: function(callback){
25         restore('stories', {authorId:userId}, callback);
26     }
27
28 }, function(e) {
29     console.log();
30     console.log('restoring is completed!');
31     process.exit(1);
32 });

```

The full code is available at [gist.github.com/4516139¹⁰](https://gist.github.com/4516139) and here:

```

1  var async = require('async');
2  var ProgressBar = require('progress');
3  var monk = require('monk');
4  var ms = require('ms');
5  var ObjectId=require('mongodb').ObjectID;
6
7  var dest = monk('localhost:27017/storify_localhost');
8  var backup = monk('localhost:27017/storify_backup');
9
10 var userId = ObjectId(YOUR-OBJECT-ID);
11 // monk should have auto casting but we need it for queries
12
13 var restore = function(collection, query, callback){
14     console.info('restoring from ' + collection);
15     var q = query;
16     backup.get(collection).count(q, function(e, n) {
17         console.log('found '+n+ ' '+collection);
18         if (e) console.error(e);
19         var bar = new ProgressBar(
20             '[ :bar ] :current/:total :percent :etas',
21             { total: n-1, width: 40 })
22         var tick = function(e) {
23             if (e) {
24                 console.error(e);
25                 bar.tick();
26             }
27             else {
28                 bar.tick();
29             }
30             if (bar.complete) {
31                 console.log();

```

¹⁰<https://gist.github.com/4516139>

```
32         console.log('restoring '+collection+' is completed');
33         callback();
34     }
35 };
36 if (n>0){
37     console.log('adding ' + n+ ' '+collection);
38     backup.get(collection).find(q, { stream: true })
39         .each(function(element) {
40             dest.get(collection).insert(element, tick);
41         });
42 } else {
43     callback();
44 }
45 });
46 }
47
48 async.series({
49     restoreUser: function(callback){ // import user element
50         backup.get('users').find({_id:userId}, {
51             stream: true,
52             limit: 1 })
53             .each(function(user) {
54                 dest.get('users').insert(user, function(e){
55                     if (e) {
56                         console.log(e);
57                     }
58                     else {
59                         console.log('resored user: '+ user.username);
60                     }
61                     callback();
62                 });
63             });
64 },
65
66     restoreIdentity: function(callback){
67         restore('identities',{
68             userid:userId
69         }, callback);
70     },
71
72     restoreStories: function(callback){
73         restore('stories', {authorid:userId}, callback);
74     }
75
76 }, function(e) {
```

```

77   console.log();
78   console.log('restoring is completed!');
79   process.exit(1);
80 });

```

To launch it, run `npm install/npm update` and change the hard-coded database values.

8.3 TDD in Node.js with Mocha

8.3.1 Who Needs Test-Driven Development?

Imagine that you need to implement a complex feature on top of an existing interface, e.g., a ‘like’ button on a comment. Without tests, you’ll have to manually create a user, log in, create a post, create a different user, log in with a different user and like the post. Tiresome? What if you’ll need to do it 10 or 20 times to find and fix some nasty bug? What if your feature breaks existing functionality, but you notice it six months after the release because there was no test?!

Don’t waste time writing tests for throwaway scripts, but please adapt the habit of Test-Driven Development for the main code base. With a little time spent in the beginning, you and your team will save time later and have confidence when rolling out new releases. Test Driven Development is a really, really, really good thing.

8.3.2 Quick Start Guide

Follow this quick guide to set up your Test-Driven Development process in Node.js with [Mocha¹¹](#).

Install [Mocha¹²](#) globally by executing this command:

```
1 $ sudo npm install -g mocha
```

We’ll also use two libraries, [Superagent¹³](#) and [expect.js¹⁴](#) by [LearnBoost¹⁵](#). To install them, fire up NPM¹⁶ commands in your project folder like this:

```

1 $ npm install superagent
2 $ npm install expect.js

```

Open a new file with .js extension and type:

¹¹<http://visionmedia.github.com/mocha/>

¹²<http://visionmedia.github.com/mocha/>

¹³<https://github.com/visionmedia/superagent>

¹⁴<https://github.com/LearnBoost/expect.js/>

¹⁵<https://github.com/LearnBoost>

¹⁶<https://npmjs.org/>

```

1 var request = require('superagent');
2 var expect = require('expect.js');
```

So far we've included two libraries. The structure of the test suite going to look like this:

```

1 describe('Suite one', function(){
2   it(function(done){
3     ...
4   });
5   it(function(done){
6     ...
7   });
8 });
9 describe('Suite two', function(){
10  it(function(done){
11    ...
12  });
13});
```

Inside of this closure, we can write a request to our server, which should be running at localhost:8080¹⁷:

```

1 ...
2 it (function(done){
3   request.post('localhost:8080').end(function(res){
4     //TODO check that response is okay
5   });
6 });
7 ...
```

Expect will give us handy functions to check any condition we can think of:

```

1 ...
2 expect(res).to.exist;
3 expect(res.status).to.equal(200);
4 expect(res.body).to.contain('world');
5 ...
```

Lastly, we need to add the `done()` call to notify Mocha that the asynchronous test has finished its work. And the full code of our first test looks like this:

¹⁷<http://localhost:8080>

```

1 var request = require('superagent');
2 var expect = require('expect.js');
3
4 describe('Suite one', function(){
5   it(function(done){
6     request.post('localhost:8080').end(function(res){
7       expect(res).to.exist;
8       expect(res.status).to.equal(200);
9       expect(res.body).to.contain('world');
10      done();
11    }));
12  });

```

If we want to get fancy, we can add **before** and **beforeEach** hooks which will, according to their names, execute once before the test (or suite) or each time before the test (or suite):

```

1 before(function(){
2   //TODO seed the database
3 });
4 describe('suite one ',function(){
5   beforeEach(function(){
6     //todo log in test user
7   });
8   it('test one', function(done){
9     ...
10  });
11 });

```

Note that before and beforeEach can be placed inside or outside of the describe construction.

To run our test, simply execute:

```
1 $ mocha test.js
```

To use a different report type:

```

1 $ mocha test.js -R list
2 $ mocah test.js -R spec

```

8.4 Wintersmith — Static Site Generator

For this book's one-page website —rapidprototypingwithjs.com¹⁸ — I used [Wintersmith](#)¹⁹ to learn something new and to ship fast. Wintersmith is a Node.js static site generator. It greatly impressed me with its flexibility

¹⁸<http://rapidprototypingwithjs.com>

¹⁹<http://jnordberg.github.com/wintersmith/>

and ease of development. In addition, I could stick to my favorite tools such as [Markdown²⁰](#), Jade and [Underscore²¹](#).

Why Static Site Generators

Here is a good article on why using a static site generator is a good idea in general: [An Introduction to Static Site Generators²²](#). It basically boils down to a few main things:

Templates

You can use template engines such as [Jade²³](#). Jade uses whitespaces to structure nested elements, and its syntax is similar to Ruby on Rail's Haml markup.

Markdown

I've copied markdown text from my book's Introduction chapter and used it without any modifications. Wintersmith comes with a [marked²⁴](#) parser by default. More on why Markdown is great in my old post: [Markdown Goodness²⁵](#).

Simple Deployment

Everything is HTML, CSS and JavaScript so you just upload the files with an FTP client, e.g., [Transmit²⁶](#) (by Panic) or [Cyberduck²⁷](#).

Basic Hosting

Due to the fact that any static web server will work well, there is no need for Heroku or Nodejitsu PaaS solutions, or even PHP/MySQL hosting.

Performance

There are no database calls, no server-side API calls, and no CPU/RAM overhead.

Flexibility

Wintersmith allows for different plugins for contents and templates, and you can even [write your own plugins²⁸](#).

8.4.1 Getting Started with Wintersmith

There is a quick getting started guide on [To install Wintersmith globally, run NPM with -g and sudo:](http://github.com/jnordberg/wintersmith²⁹.</p></div><div data-bbox=)

²⁰<http://daringfireball.net/projects/markdown/>

²¹<http://underscorejs.org/>

²²<http://www.mickgardner.com/2012/12/an-introduction-to-static-site.html>

²³<https://github.com/visionmedia/jade>

²⁴<https://github.com/chjj/marked>

²⁵<http://www.webapplog.com/markdown-goodness/>

²⁶<http://www.panic.com/transmit/>

²⁷<http://cyberduck.ch/>

²⁸<https://github.com/jnordberg/wintersmith#content-plugins>

²⁹<https://github.com/jnordberg/wintersmith>

```
1 $ sudo npm install wintersmith -g
```

Then run to use the default blog template:

```
1 $ wintersmith new <path>
```

or for an empty site:

```
1 $ wintersmith new <path> -template basic
```

or use a shortcut:

```
1 $ wintersmith new <path> -T basic
```

Similar to Ruby on Rails scaffolding, Wintersmith will generate a basic skeleton with **contents** and **templates** folders. To preview a website, run these commands:

```
1 $ cd <path>
2 $ wintersmith preview
3 $ open http://localhost:8080
```

Most of the changes will be updates automatically in the preview mode, except for the [config.json file³⁰](#).

Images, CSS, JavaScript and other files go into the **contents** folder. The Wintersmith generator has the following logic:

1. looks for *.md files in the contents folder
2. reads [metadata³¹](#) such as the template name
3. processes *.jade [templates³²](#) per metadata in *.md files

When you're done with your static site, just run:

```
1 $ wintersmith build
```

³⁰<https://github.com/jnordberg/wintersmith#config>

³¹<https://github.com/jnordberg/wintersmith#the-page-plugin>

³²<https://github.com/jnordberg/wintersmith#templates>

8.4.2 Other Static Site Generators

Here are some of the other Node.js static site generators:

- [DocPad³³](#)
- [Blacksmith³⁴](#)
- [Scotch³⁵](#)
- [Wheat³⁶](#)
- [Petrify³⁷](#)

A more detailed overview of these static site generators is available in the post [Node.js Based Static Site Generators³⁸](#).

For other languages and frameworks like Rails and PHP, take a look at [Static Site Generators by GitHub Watcher Count³⁹](#) and the “mother of all site generator lists⁴⁰”.

8.5 Intro to Express.js: Simple REST API app with Monk and MongoDB

8.5.1 REST API app with Express.js and Monk

This app is a start of a [mongoui⁴¹](#) project — a phpMyAdmin counterpart for MongoDB written in Node.js. The goal is to provide a module with a nice web admin user interface. It will be something like [Parse.com⁴²](#), [Firebase.com⁴³](#), [MongoHQ⁴⁴](#) or [MongoLab⁴⁵](#) has, but without tying it to any particular service. Why do we have to type `db.users.findOne({ '_id': ObjectId('...') })` anytime we want to look up the user information? The alternative [MongoHub⁴⁶](#) Mac app is nice (and free) but clunky to use and not web-based.

Ruby enthusiasts like to compare Express to the [Sinatra⁴⁷](#) framework. It’s similarly flexible in the way developers can build their apps. Application routes are set up in a similar manner, i.e., `app.get('/products/:id', showProduct);`. Currently Express.js is at version number 3.1. In addition to Express, we’ll use the [Monk⁴⁸](#) module.

We’ll use [Node Package Manager⁴⁹](#), which usually comes with a Node.js installation. If you don’t have it

³³<https://github.com/bevry/docpad#readme>

³⁴<https://github.com/flatiron/blacksmith>

³⁵<https://github.com/techwraith/scotch>

³⁶<https://github.com/creationix/wheat>

³⁷<https://github.com/caolan/petrify>

³⁸<http://blog.bmannconsulting.com/node-static-site-generators/>

³⁹<https://gist.github.com/2254924>

⁴⁰<http://nanoc.stoneship.org/docs/1-introduction/#similar-projects>

⁴¹<http://github.com/azat-co/mongoui>

⁴²<http://parse.com>

⁴³<http://firebase.com>

⁴⁴<http://mongohq.com>

⁴⁵<http://mongolab.com>

⁴⁶<http://mongohub.todayclose.com/>

⁴⁷<http://www.sinatrarb.com/>

⁴⁸<https://github.com/LearnBoost/monk>

⁴⁹<http://npmjs.org>

already, you can get it at npmjs.org⁵⁰.

Create a new folder and NPM configuration file, **package.json**, in it with the following content:

```

1  {
2      "name": "mongoui",
3      "version": "0.0.1",
4      "engines": {
5          "node": ">= v0.6"
6      },
7      "dependencies": {
8          "mongodb": "1.2.14",
9          "monk": "0.7.1",
10         "express": "3.1.0"
11     }
12 }
```

Now run `npm install` to download and install modules into the **node_module** folder. If everything went okay you'll see bunch of folders in **node_modules** folders. All of the code for our application will be in one file, **index.js**, to keep it simple stupid:

```

1  var mongo = require('mongodb');
2  var express = require('express');
3  var monk = require('monk');
4  var db = monk('localhost:27017/test');
5  var app = new express();
6
7  app.use(express.static(__dirname + '/public'));
8  app.get('/',function(req,res){
9      db.driver.admin.listDatabases(function(e,dbs){
10          res.json(dbs);
11      });
12  });
13 app.get('/collections',function(req,res){
14     db.driver.collectionNames(function(e,names){
15         res.json(names);
16     })
17  });
18 app.get('/collections/:name',function(req,res){
19     var collection = db.get(req.params.name);
20     collection.find({},{limit:20},function(e,docs){
21         res.json(docs);
22     })
23  });
24 app.listen(3000)
```

⁵⁰<http://npmjs.org>

Let's break down the code piece by piece. Module declaration:

```
1 var mongo = require('mongodb');
2 var express = require('express');
3 var monk = require('monk');
```

Database and Express application instantiation:

```
1 var db = monk('localhost:27017/test');
2 var app = new express();
```

Tell Express application to load and server static files (if there are any) from the public folder:

```
1 app.use(express.static(__dirname + '/public'));
```

Home page, a.k.a. root route, set up:

```
1 app.get('/', function(req, res){
2   db.driver.admin.listDatabases(function(e, dbs){
3     res.json(dbs);
4   });
5 });
```

`get()` function just takes two parameters: string and function. The string can have slashes and colons — for example, `product/:id`. The function must have two parameters: request and response. Request has all of the information like query string parameters, session and headers, and response is an object to which we output the results. In this case, we do it by calling the `res.json()` function.

`db.driver.admin.listDatabases()`, as you might guess, gives us a list of databases in an asynchronous manner.

Two other routes are set up in a similar manner with the `get()` function:

```
1 app.get('/collections', function(req, res){
2   db.driver.collectionNames(function(e, names){
3     res.json(names);
4   })
5 });
6 app.get('/collections/:name', function(req, res){
7   var collection = db.get(req.params.name);
8   collection.find({}, {limit:20}, function(e, docs){
9     res.json(docs);
10  })
11});
```

Express conveniently supports other HTTP verbs like post and update. In the case of setting up a post route, we write this:

```
1 app.post('product/:id', function(req,res) {...});
```

Express also has support for middleware. Middleware is just a request function handler with three parameters: `request`, `response`, and `next`. For example:

```
1 app.post('product/:id',
2   authenticateUser,
3   validateProduct,
4   addProduct
5 );
6
7 function authenticateUser(req,res, next) {
8   //check req.session for authentication
9   next();
10 }
11
12 function validateProduct (req, res, next) {
13   //validate submitted data
14   next();
15 }
16
17 function addProduct (req, res) {
18   //save data to database
19 }
```

`validateProduct` and `authenticateProduct` are middlewares. They are usually put into separate file (or files) in big projects.

Another way to set up middleware in the Express application is to utilize the `use()` function. For example, earlier we did this for static assets:

```
1 app.use(express.static(__dirname + '/public'));
```

We can also do it for error handlers:

```
1 app.use(errorHandler);
```

Assuming you have mongoDB installed, this app will connect to it ([localhost:27017⁵¹](http://localhost:27017)) and display the collection name and items in collections. To start the mongo server:

```
1 $ mongod
```

to run the app (keep the `mongod` terminal window open):

⁵¹<http://localhost:27017>

```
1 $ node .
```

or

```
1 $ node index.js
```

To see the app working, open [localhost:3000⁵²](http://localhost:3000) in Chrome with the [JSONViewer⁵³](#) extension (to render JSON nicely).

8.6 Intro to Express.js: Parameters, Error Handling and Other Middleware

8.6.1 Request Handlers

Express.js is a node.js framework that, among other things, provides a way to organize routes. Each route is defined via a method call on an application object with a URL pattern as a first parameter (RegExp is also supported) — for example:

```
1 app.get('api/v1/stories/', function(res, req){
2   ...
3 })
```

or, for a POST method:

```
1 app.post('/api/v1/stories' function(req,res){
2   ...
3 })
```

Needless to say, DELETE and PUT methods are [supported as well⁵⁴](#).

The callbacks that we pass to the `get()` or `post()` methods are called request handlers because they take requests (`req`), process them, and write to response (`res`) objects. For example:

```
1 app.get('/about', function(req,res){
2   res.send('About Us: ...');
3 });
```

We can have multiple request handlers — hence the name *middleware*. They accept a third parameter, `next`, calling which (`next()`) will switch the execution flow to the next handler:

⁵²<http://localhost:3000>

⁵³<https://chrome.google.com/webstore/detail/jsonview/chklaanhfefbnpoihckbnefhakgolnmc?hl=en>

⁵⁴<http://expressjs.com/api.html#app.VERB>

```

1 app.get('/api/v1/stories/:id', function(req,res, next) {
2   //do authorization
3   //if not authorized or there is an error
4   // return next(error);
5   //if authorized and no errors
6   return next();
7 }, function(req,res, next) {
8   //extract id and fetch the object from the database
9   //assuming no errors, save story in the request object
10  req.story = story;
11  return next();
12 }, function(req,res) {
13   //output the result of the database search
14   res.send(res.story);
15 });

```

The ID of a story in URL patter is a query string parameter which we need for finding matching items in the database.

8.6.2 Parameters Middleware

Parameters are values passed in a query string of a URL of the request. If we didn't have Express.js or a similar library and had to use just the core Node.js modules, we'd have to extract parameters from [HTTP.request⁵⁵](#) object via some `require('querystring').parse(url)` or `require('url').parse(url, true)` functions trickery.

Thanks to [Connect framework⁵⁶](#) and the people at [VisionMedia⁵⁷](#), Express.js already has support for parameters, error handling and many other important features in the form of middlewares. This is how we can plug param middleware in our app:

```

1 app.param('id', function(req,res, next, id){
2   //do something with id
3   //store id or other info in req object
4   //call next when done
5   next();
6 });
7
8 app.get('/api/v1/stories/:id',function(req,res){
9   //param middleware will be execute before and
10  //we expect req object already have needed info
11  //output something
12  res.send(data);
13 });

```

⁵⁵http://nodejs.org/api/http.html#http_http_request_options_callback

⁵⁶<http://www.senchalabs.org/connect/>

⁵⁷<https://github.com/visionmedia/express>

For example:

```

1 app.param('id', function(req,res, next, id){
2   req.db.get('stories').findOne({_id:id}, function (e, story){
3     if (e) return next(e);
4     if (!story) return next(new Error('Nothing is found'));
5     req.story = story;
6     next();
7   });
8 });
9
10 app.get('/api/v1/stories/:id',function(req,res){
11   res.send(req.story);
12 });

```

Or we can use multiple request handlers, but the concept remains the same: we can expect to have the `req.story` object or an error thrown prior to the execution of this code, so we abstract the common code/logic of getting parameters and their respective objects:

```

1 app.get('/api/v1/stories/:id', function(req,res, next) {
2   //do authorization
3   },
4   //we have an object in req.story so no work is needed here
5   function(req,res) {
6     //output the result of the database search
7     res.send(story);
8 });

```

Authorization and input sanitation are also good candidates for residing in the middlewares.

The function `param()` is especially cool because we can combine different keys, e.g.:

```

1 app.get('/api/v1/stories/:storyId/elements/:elementId',
2   function(req,res){
3     res.send(req.element);
4   }
5 );

```

8.6.3 Error Handling

Error handling is typically used across the whole application, so it's best to implement it as a middleware. It has the same parameters plus one more, `error`:

```
1 app.use(function(err, req, res, next) {  
2   //do logging and user-friendly error message display  
3   res.send(500);  
4 })
```

In fact, the response can be anything:

JSON string

```
1 app.use(function(err, req, res, next) {  
2   //do logging and user-friendly error message display  
3   res.send(500, {status:500,  
4     message: 'internal error',  
5     type:'internal'}  
6   );  
7 })
```

Text message

```
1 app.use(function(err, req, res, next) {  
2   //do logging and user-friendly error message display  
3   res.send(500, 'internal server error');  
4 })
```

Error page

```
1 app.use(function(err, req, res, next) {  
2   //do logging and user-friendly error message display  
3   //assuming that template engine is plugged in  
4   res.render('500');  
5 })
```

Redirect to error page

```
1 app.use(function(err, req, res, next) {  
2   //do logging and user-friendly error message display  
3   res.redirect('/public/500.html');  
4 })
```

Error HTTP response status (401, 400, 500, etc.)

```
1 app.use(function(err, req, res, next) {  
2   //do logging and user-friendly error message display  
3   res.end(500);  
4 })
```

By the way, logging should also be abstracted in a middleware!

To trigger an error from within your request handlers and middleware, you can just call:

```
1 next(error);
```

or

```
1 next(new Error('Something went wrong :-('));
```

You can also have multiple error handlers and use named instead of anonymous functions, as its shows in the [Express.js Error handling guide](#)⁵⁸.

8.6.4 Other Middleware

In addition to extracting parameters, it can be used for many things, like authorization, error handling, sessions, output, and others.

`res.json()` is one of them. It conveniently outputs the JavaScript/Node.js object as a JSON. For example:

```
1 app.get('/api/v1/stories/:id', function(req,res){  
2   res.json(req.story);  
3 });
```

is equivalent to (if `req.story` is an Array and Object):

```
1 app.get('/api/v1/stories/:id', function(req,res){  
2   res.send(req.story);  
3 });
```

or

⁵⁸<http://expressjs.com/guide.html#error-handling>

```
1 app.get('api/v1/stories/:id', function(req,res){  
2   res.set({  
3     'Content-Type': 'application/json'  
4   });  
5   res.send(req.story);  
6 });
```

8.6.5 Abstraction

Middleware is flexible. You can use anonymous or named functions, but the best thing is to abstract request handlers into external modules based on the functionality:

```
1 var stories = require('./routes/stories');  
2 var elements = require('./routes/elements');  
3 var users = require('./routes/users');  
4 ...  
5 app.get('/stories/', stories.find);  
6 app.get('/stories/:storyId/elements/:elementId', elements.find);  
7 app.put('/users/:userId', users.update);
```

routes/stories.js:

```
1 module.exports.find = function(req,res, next) {  
2 };
```

routes/elements.js:

```
1 module.exports.find = function(req,res,next){  
2 };
```

routes/users.js:

```
1 module.exports.update = function(req,res,next){  
2 };
```

You can use some functional programming tricks, like this:

```

1  function requiredParamHandler(param){
2    //do something with a param, e.g.,
3    //check that it's present in a query string
4    return function (req,res, next) {
5      //use param, e.g., if token is valid proceed with next();
6      next();
7    });
8  }
9
10 app.get('/api/v1/stories/:id',
11   requiredParamHandler('token'),
12   story.show
13 );
14
15 var story = {
16   show: function (req, res, next) {
17     //do some logic, e.g., restrict fields to output
18     return res.send();
19   }
20 }

```

As you can see, middleware is a powerful concept for keeping code organized. The best practice is to keep the router lean and thin by moving all of the logic into corresponding external modules/files. This way, important server configuration parameters will be neatly in one place when you need them! :-)

8.7 JSON REST API server with Node.js and MongoDB using Mongoskin and Express.js

This tutorial will walk you through writing test using the [Mocha⁵⁹](#) and [Super Agent⁶⁰](#) libraries and then use them in a test-driven development manner to build a [Node.js⁶¹](#) free JSON REST API server utilizing [Express.js⁶²](#) framework and [Mongoskin⁶³](#) library for [MongoDB⁶⁴](#). In this REST API server, we'll perform **create, update, remove and delete** (CRUD) operations and harness Express.js [middleware⁶⁵](#) concept with `app.param()` and `app.use()` methods.

⁵⁹<http://visionmedia.github.io/mocha/>

⁶⁰<http://visionmedia.github.io/superagent/>

⁶¹<http://nodejs.org>

⁶²<http://expressjs.com/>

⁶³<https://github.com/kissjs/node-mongoskin>

⁶⁴<http://www.mongodb.org/>

⁶⁵<http://expressjs.com/api.html#middleware>

8.7.1 Test Coverage

Before anything else let's write functional tests that make HTTP requests to our soon-to-be-created REST API server. If you know how to use [Mocha⁶⁶](#) or just want to jump straight to the Express.js app implementation feel free to do so. You can use CURL terminal commands for testing too.

Assuming we already have Node.js, [NPM⁶⁷](#) and MongoDB installed, let's create a *new* folder (or if you wrote the tests use that folder):

```
1 mkdir rest-api  
2 cd rest-api
```

We'll use [Mocha⁶⁸](#), [Expect.js⁶⁹](#) and [Super Agent⁷⁰](#) libraries. To install them run these command from the project folder:

```
1 $ npm install mocha  
2 $ npm install expect.js  
3 $ npm install superagent
```

Now let's create **express.test.js** file in the same folder which will have six suites:

- creating a new object
- retrieving an object by its ID
- retrieving the whole collection
- updating an object by its ID
- checking an updated object by its ID
- removing an object by its ID

HTTP requests are just a breeze with Super Agent's chained functions which we'll put inside of each test suite. Here is the full source code for the **express.test.js** file:

⁶⁶<http://visionmedia.github.io/mocha/>

⁶⁷<http://npmjs.org>

⁶⁸<http://visionmedia.github.io/mocha/>

⁶⁹<https://github.com/LearnBoost/expect.js/>

⁷⁰<http://visionmedia.github.io/superagent/>

```
1 var superagent = require('superagent')
2 var expect = require('expect.js')
3
4 describe('express rest api server', function(){
5     var id
6
7     it('post object', function(done){
8         superagent.post('http://localhost:3000/collections/test')
9             .send({ name: 'John'
10                 , email: 'john@rpjs.co'
11             })
12             .end(function(e,res){
13                 // console.log(res.body)
14                 expect(e).to.eql(null)
15                 expect(res.body.length).to.eql(1)
16                 expect(res.body[0]._id.length).to.eql(24)
17                 id = res.body[0]._id
18                 done()
19             })
20     })
21
22     it('retrieves an object', function(done){
23         superagent.get('http://localhost:3000/collections/test/' + id)
24             .end(function(e, res){
25                 // console.log(res.body)
26                 expect(e).to.eql(null)
27                 expect(typeof res.body).to.eql('object')
28                 expect(res.body._id.length).to.eql(24)
29                 expect(res.body._id).to.eql(id)
30                 done()
31             })
32     })
33
34     it('retrieves a collection', function(done){
35         superagent.get('http://localhost:3000/collections/test')
36             .end(function(e, res){
37                 // console.log(res.body)
38                 expect(e).to.eql(null)
39                 expect(res.body.length).to.be.above(1)
40                 expect(res.body.map(function (item){
41                     return item._id
42                 })).to.contain(id)
43                 done()
44             })
45     })
})
```

```
46
47 it('updates an object', function(done){
48   superagent.put('http://localhost:3000/collections/test/'+id)
49     .send({name: 'Peter'
50       , email: 'peter@yahoo.com'})
51     .end(function(e, res){
52       // console.log(res.body)
53       expect(e).to.eql(null)
54       expect(typeof res.body).to.eql('object')
55       expect(res.body.msg).to.eql('success')
56       done()
57     })
58   })
59
60 it('checks an updated object', function(done){
61   superagent.get('http://localhost:3000/collections/test/'+id)
62     .end(function(e, res){
63       // console.log(res.body)
64       expect(e).to.eql(null)
65       expect(typeof res.body).to.eql('object')
66       expect(res.body._id.length).to.eql(24)
67       expect(res.body._id).to.eql(id)
68       expect(res.body.name).to.eql('Peter')
69       done()
70     })
71   })
72
73 it('removes an object', function(done){
74   superagent.del('http://localhost:3000/collections/test/'+id)
75     .end(function(e, res){
76       // console.log(res.body)
77       expect(e).to.eql(null)
78       expect(typeof res.body).to.eql('object')
79       expect(res.body.msg).to.eql('success')
80       done()
81     })
82   })
83 })
```

To run the tests we can use the `$ mocha express.test.js` command.

8.7.2 Dependencies

In this tutorial we'll utilize [Mongoskin⁷¹](#), a MongoDB library which is a better alternative to the plain good old [native MongoDB driver for Node.js⁷²](#). In addition Mongoskin is more light-weight than Mongoose and schema-less. For more insight please check out [Mongoskin comparison blurb⁷³](#).

[Express.js⁷⁴](#) is a wrapper for the core Node.js [HTTP module⁷⁵](#) objects. The Express.js framework is build on top of [Connect⁷⁶](#) middleware and provided tons of convenience. Some people compare the framework to Ruby's Sinatra in terms of how it's non-opinionated and configurable.

If you've create a `rest-api` folder in the previous section *Test Coverage*, simply run these commands to install modules for the application:

```
1 npm install express
2 npm install mongoskin
```

8.7.3 Implementation

First things first, so let's define our dependencies:

```
1 var express = require('express')
2 , mongoskin = require('mongoskin')
```

After the version 3.x, Express streamlines the instantiation of its app instance, in a way that this line will give us a `server` object:

```
1 var app = express()
```

To extract params from the body of the requests we'll use `bodyParser()` middleware which looks more like a configuration statement:

```
1 app.use(express.bodyParser())
```

Middleware (in [this⁷⁷](#) and [other forms⁷⁸](#)) is a powerful and convenient pattern in Express.js and [Connect⁷⁹](#) to organize and re-use code.

As with the `bodyParser()` method that saves us from the hurdles of parsing a body object of HTTP request, Mongoskin makes possible to connect to the MongoDB database in one effortless line of code:

⁷¹<https://github.com/kissjs/node-mongoskin>

⁷²<https://github.com/mongodb/node-mongodb-native>

⁷³<https://github.com/kissjs/node-mongoskin#comparation>

⁷⁴<http://expressjs.com/>

⁷⁵<http://nodejs.org/api/http.html>

⁷⁶<https://github.com/senchalabs/connect>

⁷⁷<http://expressjs.com/api.html#app.use>

⁷⁸<http://expressjs.com/api.html#middleware>

⁷⁹<https://github.com/senchalabs/connect>

```
1 var db = mongoskin.db('localhost:27017/test', {safe:true});
```

Note: If you wish to connect to a remote database, e.g., [MongoHQ⁸⁰](#) instance, substitute the string with your username, password, host and port values. Here is the format of the URI string: `mongodb://[username:password@]host1[:port1][,...,[hostN[:portN]]]`

The `app.param()` method is another Express.js middleware. It basically says “do something every time there is this value in the URL pattern of the request handler.” In our case we select a particular collection when request pattern contains a sting `collectionName` prefixed with a colon (you’ll see it later in the routes):

```
1 app.param('collectionName',
2   function(req, res, next, collectionName) {
3     req.collection = db.collection(collectionName)
4     return next()
5   }
6 )
```

Merely to be user-friendly, let’s put a root route with a message:

```
1 app.get('/', function(req, res) {
2   res.send('please select a collection, e.g., /collections/messages')
3 })
```

Now the real work begins. Here is how we retrieve a list of items sorted by `_id` and which has a limit of 10:

```
1 app.get('/collections/:collectionName',
2   function(req, res) {
3     req.collection
4       .find({},
5         {limit:10, sort: [['_id', -1]]})
6       .toArray(function(e, results){
7         if (e) return next(e)
8         res.send(results)
9       })
10    )
11  }
12 )
```

Have you noticed a `:collectionName` string in the URL pattern parameter? This and the previous `app.param()` middleware is what gives us the `req.collection` object which points to a specified collection in our database.

The object creating endpoint is slightly easier to grasp since we just pass the whole payload to the MongoDB (method a.k.a. free JSON REST API):

⁸⁰<https://www.mongohq.com/home>

```

1 app.post('/collections/:collectionName', function(req, res) {
2   req.collection.insert(req.body, {}, function(e, results){
3     if (e) return next(e)
4     res.send(results)
5   })
6 })

```

Single object retrieval functions are faster than `find()`, but they use different interface (they return object directly instead of a cursor), so please be aware of that. In addition, we're extracting the ID from `:id` part of the path with `req.params.id` Express.js magic:

```

1 app.get('/collections/:collectionName/:id', function(req, res) {
2   req.collection.findOne({_id: req.collection.id(req.params.id)},
3     function(e, result){
4       if (e) return next(e)
5       res.send(result)
6     })
7   )
8 })

```

PUT request handler gets more interesting because `update()` doesn't return the augmented object, instead it returns us a count of affected objects.

Also `{$set:req.body}` is a special MongoDB operator (operators tend to start with a dollar sign) that sets values.

The second '`{safe:true, multi:false}`' parameter is an object with options that tell MongoDB to wait for the execution before running the callback function and to process only one (first) item.

```

1 app.put('/collections/:collectionName/:id', function(req, res) {
2   req.collection.update({_id: req.collection.id(req.params.id)},
3     {$set:req.body},
4     {safe:true, multi:false},
5     function(e, result){
6       if (e) return next(e)
7       res.send((result==1)?{msg: 'success'}:{msg: 'error'})
8     })
9   )
10 })

```

Finally, the DELETE method which also output a custom JSON message:

```
1 app.del('/collections/:collectionName/:id', function(req, res) {
2   req.collection.remove({_id: req.collection.id(req.params.id)},
3     function(e, result){
4       if (e) return next(e)
5       res.send((result==1)?{msg: 'success'}:{msg: 'error'})
6     }
7   )
8 })
```

Note: *The delete is an operator in JavaScript, so Express.js uses app.del instead.*

The last line that actually starts the server on port 3000 in this case:

```
1 app.listen(3000)
```

Just in case something is not working quite well here is the full code of **express.js** file:

```
1 var express = require('express')
2 , mongoskin = require('mongoskin')
3
4 var app = express()
5 app.use(express.bodyParser())
6
7 var db = mongoskin.db('localhost:27017/test', {safe:true});
8
9 app.param('collectionName',
10   function(req, res, next, collectionName){
11     req.collection = db.collection(collectionName)
12     return next()
13   }
14 )
15 app.get('/', function(req, res) {
16   res.send('please select a collection, '
17     + 'e.g., /collections/messages')
18 })
19 app.get('/collections/:collectionName', function(req, res) {
20   req.collection.find({}, {limit:10, sort: [[ '_id', -1 ]]})
21   .toArray(function(e, results){
22     if (e) return next(e)
23     res.send(results)
24   }
25   )
26 })
27
28 app.post('/collections/:collectionName', function(req, res) {
```

```

29     req.collection.insert(req.body, {}, function(e, results){
30         if (e) return next(e)
31         res.send(results)
32     })
33 })
34 app.get('/collections/:collectionName/:id', function(req, res) {
35     req.collection.findOne({_id: req.collection.id(req.params.id)},
36         function(e, result){
37             if (e) return next(e)
38             res.send(result)
39         })
40     })
41 })
42 app.put('/collections/:collectionName/:id', function(req, res) {
43     req.collection.update({_id: req.collection.id(req.params.id)},
44         {$set:req.body},
45         {safe:true, multi:false},
46         function(e, result){
47             if (e) return next(e)
48             res.send((result==1)?{msg: 'success'}:{msg: 'error'})
49         })
50     })
51 })
52 app.del('/collections/:collectionName/:id', function(req, res) {
53     req.collection.remove({_id: req.collection.id(req.params.id)},
54         function(e, result){
55             if (e) return next(e)
56             res.send((result==1)?{msg: 'success'}:{msg: 'error'})
57         })
58     })
59 })
60
61 app.listen(3000)

```

Exit your editor and run this in your terminal:

```
1 $ node express.js
```

And in a different window (without closing the first one):

```
1 $ mocha express.test.js
```

If you really don't like Mocha and/or BDD, CURL is always there for you. :-)

For example, CURL data to make a POST request:

```
1 $ curl -d "" http://localhost:3000
```

GET requests also work in the browser, for example <http://localhost:3000/test>.

In this tutorial our tests are longer than the app code itself so abandoning test-driven development might be tempting, but believe me **the good habits of TDD will save you hours and hours** during any serious development when the complexity of the applications you work one is big.

8.7.4 Conclusion

The Express.js and Mongoskin libraries are great when you need to build a simple REST API server in a few line of code. Later, if you need to expand the libraries they also provide a way to configure and organize your code.

NoSQL databases like MongoDB are good at free-REST APIs where we don't have to define schemas and can throw any data and it'll be saved.

The full code of both test and app files: <https://gist.github.com/azat-co/6075685>.

If you like to learn more about Express.js and other JavaScript libraries take a look at the series [Intro to Express.js tutorials⁸¹](#).

Note: *In this example I'm using semi-colon less style. Semi-colons in JavaScript are [absolutely optional⁸²](#) except in two cases: in the for loop and before expression/statement that starts with parenthesis (e.g., [Immediately-Invoked Function Expression⁸³](#)).

8.8 Node.js MVC: Express.js + Derby Hello World Tutorial

8.8.1 Node MVC Framework

[Express.js⁸⁴](#) is a popular node framework which uses the middleware concept to enhance the functionality of applications. [Derby⁸⁵](#) is a new sophisticated Model View Controller ([MVC⁸⁶](#)) framework which is designed to be used with [Express⁸⁷](#) as its middleware. Derby also comes with the support of [Racer⁸⁸](#), data synchronization engine, and a [Handlebars⁸⁹](#)-like template engine, among [many other features⁹⁰](#).

⁸¹<http://webapplog.com/tag/intro-to-express-js/>

⁸²<http://blog.izs.me/post/2353458699/an-open-letter-to-javascript-leaders-regarding>

⁸³http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Immediately-invoked_function_expression

⁸⁴<http://expressjs.com>

⁸⁵<http://derbyjs.com>

⁸⁶<http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Model%E2%80%93view%E2%80%93controller>

⁸⁷<http://expressjs.com>

⁸⁸<https://github.com/codeparty/racer>

⁸⁹<https://github.com/wycats/handlebars.js/>

⁹⁰<http://derbyjs.com/#features>

8.8.2 Derby Installation

Let's set up a basic Derby application architecture without the use of scaffolding. Usually project generators are confusing when people just start to learn a new comprehensive framework. This is a bare minimum "Hello World" application tutorial that still illustrates the Derby skeleton and demonstrates live-templates with websockets.

Of course, we'll need [Node.js⁹¹](#) and [NPM⁹²](#), which can be obtained at [nodejs.org⁹³](#). To install Derby globally, run:

```
1 $ npm install -g derby
```

To check the installation:

```
1 $ derby -V
```

My version, as of April 2013, is 0.3.15. We should be good to go to creating our first app!

8.8.3 File Structure

This is the project folder structure:

```
1 project/
2   -package.json
3   -index.js
4   -derby-app.js
5   views/
6     derby-app.html
7   styles/
8     derby-app.less
```

8.8.4 Dependencies

Let's include dependencies and other basic information in the `package.json` file:

⁹¹<http://nodejs.org>

⁹²<http://npmjs.org>

⁹³<http://nodejs.org>

```

1  {
2    "name": "DerbyTutorial",
3    "description": "",
4    "version": "0.0.0",
5    "main": "./server.js",
6    "dependencies": {
7      "derby": "*",
8      "express": "3.x"
9    },
10   "private": true
11 }

```

Now we can run `npm install`, which will download our dependencies into `node_modules` folder.

8.8.5 Views

Views must be in the `views` folder, and they must be either in `index.html` under a folder which has the same name as your derby app JavaScript file, i.e., `views/derby-app/index.html`, or be inside of a file which has the same name as your derby app JS file, i.e., `derby-app.html`.

In this example, the “Hello World” app, we’ll use `<Body:>` template and `{message}` variable. Derby uses [mustach⁹⁴](#)-handlebars-like syntax for reactive binding. `index.html` looks like this:

```

1 <Body:>
2   <input value="{message}"><h1>{message}</h1>

```

Same thing with Stylus/LESS files; in our example, `index.css` has just one line:

```

1 h1 {
2   color: blue;
3 }

```

To find out more about those wonderful CSS preprocessors, check out the documentation at [Stylus⁹⁵](#) and [LESS⁹⁶](#).

8.8.6 Main Server

`index.js` is our main server file, and we begin it with an inclusion of dependencies with the `require()` function:

⁹⁴<http://mustache.github.io/>

⁹⁵<http://learnboost.github.io/stylus/>

⁹⁶<http://lesscss.org/>

```

1 var http = require('http'),
2   express = require('express'),
3   derby = require('derby'),
4   derbyApp = require('./derby-app');

```

The last line is our derby application file `derby-app.js`.

Now we're creating the Express.js application (v3.x has significant differences between 2.x) and an HTTP server:

```

1 var expressApp = new express(),
2   server = http.createServer(expressApp);

```

`Derby`⁹⁷ uses the `Racer`⁹⁸ data synchronization library, which we create like this:

```

1 var store = derby.createStore({
2   listen: server
3 });

```

To fetch some data from back-end to the front-end, we instantiate the model object:

```

1 var model = store.createModel();

```

Most importantly we need to pass the model and routes as middlewares to the Express.js app. We need to expose the public folder for socket.io to work properly.

```

1 expressApp.
2   use(store.modelMiddleware()).
3   use(express.static(__dirname + '/public')).
4   use(derbyApp.router()).
5   use(expressApp.router);

```

Now we can start the server on port 3001 (or any other):

```

1 server.listen(3001, function(){
2   model.set('message', 'Hello World!');
3 });

```

Full code of `index.js` file:

⁹⁷<http://derbyjs.com>

⁹⁸<https://github.com/codeparty/racer>

```

1 var http = require('http'),
2   express = require('express'),
3   derby = require('derby'),
4   derbyApp = require('./derby-app');
5
6 var expressApp = new express(),
7   server = http.createServer(expressApp);
8
9 var store = derby.createStore({
10   listen: server
11 });
12
13 var model = store.createModel();
14
15 expressApp.
16   use(store.modelMiddleware()).
17   use(express.static(__dirname + '/public')).
18   use(derbyApp.router()).
19   use(expressApp.router());
20
21 server.listen(3001, function(){
22   model.set('message', 'Hello World!');
23 });

```

8.8.7 Derby Application

Finally, the Derby app file, which contains code for both a front-end and a back-end. Front-end only code is inside of the `app.ready()` callback. To start, let's require and create an app. Derby uses unusual construction (not the same familiar good old `module.exports = app`):

```

1 var derby = require('derby'),
2   app = derby.createApp(module);

```

To make socket.io magic work, we need to subscribe a model attribute to its visual representation — in other words, bind data and view. We can do it in the root route, and this is how we define it (patter is `/`, a.k.a. root):

```

1 app.get('/', function(page, model, params) {
2   model.subscribe('message', function() {
3     page.render();
4   });
5 });

```

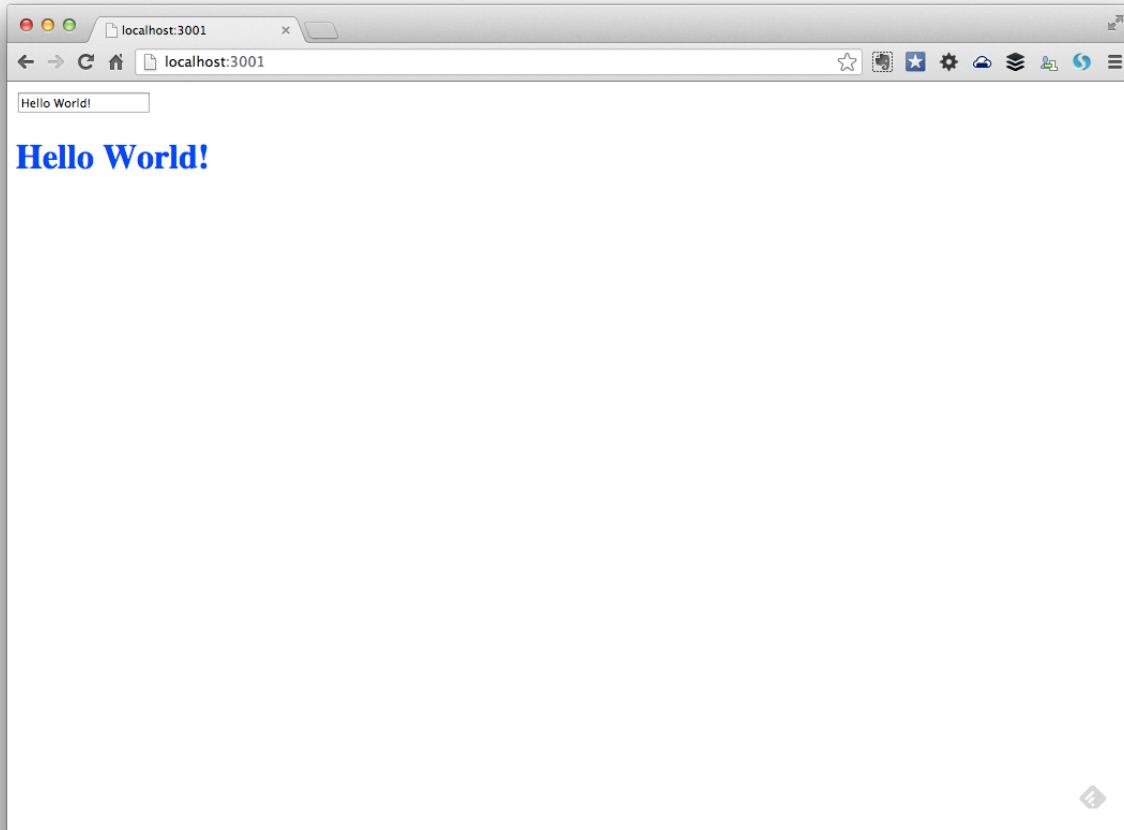
Full code of `derby-app.js` file:

```
1 var derby = require('derby'),
2     app = derby.createApp(module);
3
4 app.get('/', function(page, model, params) {
5   model.subscribe('message', function() {
6     page.render();
7   });
8 });


```

8.8.8 Launching Hello World App

Now everything should be ready to boot our server. Execute `node .` or `node index.js` and open a browser at [localhost:3001⁹⁹](http://localhost:3001). You should be able to see something like this:



Derby + Express.js Hello World App

⁹⁹<http://localhost:3001>

8.8.9 Passing Values to Back-End

Of course, the static data is not much, so we can slightly modify our app to make back-end and front-end pieces talk with each other.

In the server file **index.js**, add `store.afterDb` to listen to set events on the **message** attribute:

```

1 server.listen(3001, function(){
2   model.set('message', 'Hello World!');
3   store.afterDb('set', 'message', function(txn, doc, prevDoc, done){
4     console.log(txn)
5     done();
6   });
7 });

```

Full code of **index.js** after modifications:

```

1 var http = require('http'),
2   express = require('express'),
3   derby = require('derby'),
4   derbyApp = require('./derby-app');
5
6 var expressApp = new express(),
7   server = http.createServer(expressApp);
8
9 var store = derby.createStore({
10   listen: server
11 });
12
13 var model = store.createModel();
14
15 expressApp.
16   use(store.modelMiddleware()).
17   use(express.static(__dirname + '/public')).
18   use(derbyApp.router()).
19   use(expressApp.router());
20
21 server.listen(3001, function(){
22   model.set('message', 'Hello World!');
23   store.afterDb('set', 'message', function(txn, doc, prevDoc, done){
24     console.log(txn)
25     done();
26   });
27 });

```

In the Derby application file **derby-app.js**, add `model.on()` to `app.ready()`:

```
1 app.ready(function(model){
2     model.on('set', 'message', function(path, object){
3         console.log('message has been changed: ' + object);
4     })
5 });

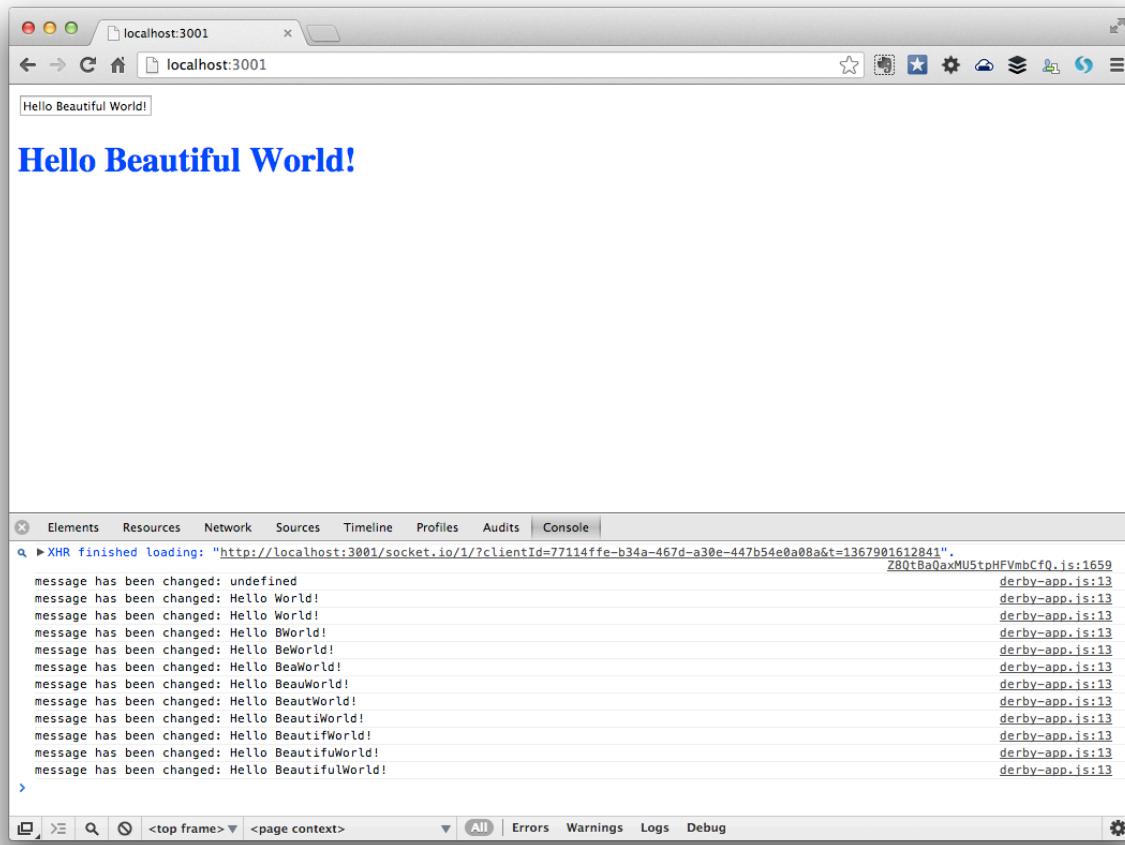

```

Full derby-app.js file after modifications:

```
1 var derby = require('derby'),
2     app = derby.createApp(module);
3
4 app.get('/', function(page, model, params) {
5     model.subscribe('message', function() {
6         page.render();
7     })
8 });
9
10 app.ready(function(model) {
11     model.on('set', 'message', function(path, object) {
12         console.log('message has been changed: ' + object);
13     })
14 });

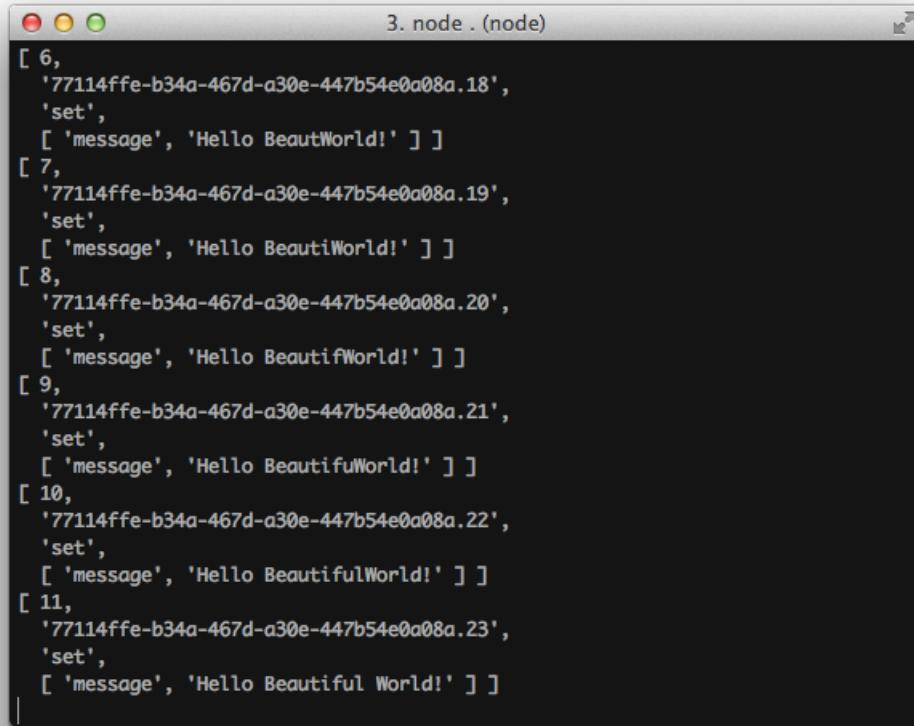

```

Now we'll see logs both in the terminal window and in the browser Developer Tools console. The end result should look like this in the browser:



Hello World App: Browser Console Logs

And like this in the terminal:



```
3. node . (node)
[ 6,
  '77114ffe-b34a-467d-a30e-447b54e0a08a.18',
  'set',
  [ 'message', 'Hello BeautWorld!' ] ]
[ 7,
  '77114ffe-b34a-467d-a30e-447b54e0a08a.19',
  'set',
  [ 'message', 'Hello BeautiWorld!' ] ]
[ 8,
  '77114ffe-b34a-467d-a30e-447b54e0a08a.20',
  'set',
  [ 'message', 'Hello BeautifWorld!' ] ]
[ 9,
  '77114ffe-b34a-467d-a30e-447b54e0a08a.21',
  'set',
  [ 'message', 'Hello BeautifuWorld!' ] ]
[ 10,
  '77114ffe-b34a-467d-a30e-447b54e0a08a.22',
  'set',
  [ 'message', 'Hello BeautifulWorld!' ] ]
[ 11,
  '77114ffe-b34a-467d-a30e-447b54e0a08a.23',
  'set',
  [ 'message', 'Hello Beautiful World!' ] ]
```

Hello World App: Terminal Console Logs

For more magic in the persistence area, check out [Racer's db property](#)¹⁰⁰. With it you can set up an automatic synch between views and database!

The full code of all of the files in this Express.js + Derby Hello World app is available as a gist at gist.github.com/azat-co/5530311¹⁰¹.

¹⁰⁰<http://derbyjs.com/#persistence>

¹⁰¹<https://gist.github.com/azat-co/5530311>

Conclusion and Further Reading

Summary: the book's conclusion, lists of JavaScript blog posts, articles, ebooks, books and other resources.

Conclusion

We hope you've enjoyed this book. It was intended to be small on theory but big on practice, and give you an overview of multiple technologies, frameworks and techniques used in modern agile web development. Rapid Prototyping with JS touched topics such as:

- jQuery
- AJAX
- CSS and LESS
- JSON and BSON
- Twitter Bootstrap
- Node.js
- MongoDB
- Parse.com
- Agile methodologies
- Git
- Heroku, MongoHQ and Windows Azure
- REST API
- Backbone.js
- AMD and Require.js
- Express.js
- Monk
- Derby

If you need in-depth knowledge or references, they are usually one click or Google search away.

Practical aspect included building multiple versions of the Chat app:

- jQuery + Parse.com JS REST API
- Backbone and Parse.com JS SDK
- Backbone and Node.js
- Backbone and Node.js + MongoDB

The Chat application has all the foundation of a typical web/mobile application: fetching data, displaying it, submitting new data. Other examples include:

- jQuery + Twitter RESP API “Tweet Analyzer”
- Parse.com “Save John”
- Node.js “Hello World”
- MongoDB “Print Collections”
- Derby + Express “Hello World”
- Backbone.js “Hello World”
- Backbone.js “Apple Database”
- Monk + Express.js “REST API Server”

Please submit a GitHub issue, if you have any feedback, comments, suggestions, or you’ve found typos, bugs, mistakes or other errata: <https://github.com/azat-co/rpjs/issues>.

Other ways to connect are via: [@azat_co¹⁰²](https://twitter.com/azat_co), <http://webapplog.com>, <http://azat.co>.

In case you enjoyed Node.js and want to find out more about building production web services with Express.js — a de factor standard for Node.js web apps — take a look at my new book [Express.js Guide: The Most Popular Node.js Framework Manual¹⁰³](#).

Further Reading

Here is a list of resources, courses, books and blogs for further reading.

JavaScript resources and free ebooks

- [Oh My JS¹⁰⁴](#): Hand-picked collection of the best JavaScript articles
- [JavaScript For Cats¹⁰⁵](#): An introduction for new programmers
- [Eloquent JavaScript¹⁰⁶](#): A modern introduction to programming
- [Superhero.js¹⁰⁷](#): comprehensive collection of JS resources
- [JavaScript Guide¹⁰⁸](#) by Mozilla Developer Network
- [JavaScript Reference¹⁰⁹](#) by Mozilla Developer Network
- [Why Use Closure¹¹⁰](#): practical uses of a closure in event based programming
- [Prototypal Inheritance¹¹¹](#): objects with inherited and local properties

¹⁰²http://twitter.com/azat_co

¹⁰³<http://expressjsguide.com>

¹⁰⁴<https://leanpub.com/ohmyjs/read>

¹⁰⁵<http://jsforcats.com/>

¹⁰⁶<http://eloquentjavascript.net/>

¹⁰⁷<http://superherojs.com/>

¹⁰⁸<https://developer.mozilla.org/en-US/docs/JavaScript/Guide>

¹⁰⁹<https://developer.mozilla.org/en-US/docs/JavaScript/Reference>

¹¹⁰<http://howtonode.org/why-use-closure>

¹¹¹<http://howtonode.org/prototypical-inheritance>

- Control Flow in Node¹¹²: parallel vs serial flows
- Truthy and Falsey Values¹¹³
- How to Write Asynchronous Code¹¹⁴
- Smooth CoffeeScript¹¹⁵: free interactive HTML5 book and collection of quick references and other goodies
- Developing Backbone.js Applications¹¹⁶: free early release book By Addy Osmani and O'Reilly
- Step by step from jQuery to Backbone¹¹⁷
- Open Web Platform Daily Digest¹¹⁸: JS daily digest
- DISTILLED HYPE¹¹⁹: JS blog/newsletter

JavaScript books

- JavaScript: The Good Parts¹²⁰
- JavaScript: The Definitive Guide¹²¹
- Secrets of the JavaScript Ninja¹²²
- Pro JavaScript Techniques¹²³

Node.js resources and free ebooks

- Felix's Node.js Beginners Guide¹²⁴
- Felix's Node.js Style Guide¹²⁵
- Felix's Node.js Convincing the boss guide¹²⁶
- Introduction to NPM¹²⁷
- NPM Cheatsheet¹²⁸
- Interactive Package.json Cheatsheet¹²⁹
- Official Node.js Documentation¹³⁰
- Node Guide¹³¹

¹¹²<http://howtonode.org/control-flow>

¹¹³<http://docs.nodejitsu.com/articles/javascript-conventions/what-are-truthy-and-falsy-values>

¹¹⁴<http://docs.nodejitsu.com/articles/getting-started/control-flow/how-to-write-asynchronous-code>

¹¹⁵<http://autotelicum.github.com/Smooth-CoffeeScript/>

¹¹⁶<http://addyosmani.github.com/backbone-fundamentals/>

¹¹⁷<https://github.com/kjbekkelund/writings/blob/master/published/understanding-backbone.md>

¹¹⁸<http://daily.w3viewer.com/>

¹¹⁹<http://distilledhype.com/>

¹²⁰<http://shop.oreilly.com/product/9780596517748.do>

¹²¹<http://www.amazon.com/dp/0596101996/?tag=stackoverfl08-20>

¹²²<http://www.manning.com/resig/>

¹²³<http://www.amazon.com/dp/1590597273/?tag=stackoverfl08-20>

¹²⁴<http://nodeguide.com/beginner.html>

¹²⁵<http://nodeguide.com/style.html>

¹²⁶http://nodeguide.com/convincing_the_boss.html

¹²⁷<http://howtonode.org/introduction-to-npm>

¹²⁸<http://blog.nodejitsu.com/npm-cheatsheet>

¹²⁹<http://package.json.nodejitsu.com/>

¹³⁰<http://nodejs.org/api/>

¹³¹<http://nodeguide.com/>

- [Node Tuts¹³²](#)
- [What Is Node?¹³³](#): free Kindle edition
- [Mastering Node.js¹³⁴](#): open source node ebook
- [Mixu's Node book¹³⁵](#): A book about using Node.js
- [Learn Node.js Completely and with Confidence¹³⁶](#): guide to learning JavaScript in 2 weeks
- [How to Node¹³⁷](#): The zen of coding in node.js

Node.js books

- [The Node Beginner Book¹³⁸](#)
- [Hands-on Node.js¹³⁹](#)
- [Backbone Tutorials¹⁴⁰](#)
- [Smashing Node.js¹⁴¹](#)
- [The Node Beginner Book¹⁴²](#)
- [Hands-on Node.js¹⁴³](#)
- [Node: Up and Running¹⁴⁴](#)
- [Node.js in Action¹⁴⁵](#)
- [Node: Up and Running¹⁴⁶](#): Scalable Server-Side Code with JavaScript
- [Node Web Development¹⁴⁷](#): A practical introduction to Node
- [Node Cookbook¹⁴⁸](#)

Interactive online classes and courses

- [Cody Academy¹⁴⁹](#): interactive programming courses
- [Programr¹⁵⁰](#)
- [LearnStreet¹⁵¹](#)

¹³²<http://nodetuts.com/>

¹³³<http://www.amazon.com/What-Is-Node-ebook/dp/B005ISQ7JC>

¹³⁴<http://visionmedia.github.com/masteringnode/>

¹³⁵<http://book.mixu.net/>

¹³⁶<http://javascriptissexy.com/learn-node-js-completely-and-with-confidence/>

¹³⁷<http://howtonode.org/>

¹³⁸<https://leanpub.com/nodebeginner>

¹³⁹<https://leanpub.com/hands-on-nodejs>

¹⁴⁰<https://leanpub.com/backbonetutorials>

¹⁴¹<http://www.amazon.com/Smashing-Node-js-JavaScript-Everywhere-Magazine/dp/1119962595/>

¹⁴²<http://www.nodebeginner.org/>

¹⁴³<http://nodetuts.com/handson-nodejs-book.html>

¹⁴⁴<http://shop.oreilly.com/product/0636920015956.do>

¹⁴⁵<http://www.manning.com/cantelon/>

¹⁴⁶<http://www.amazon.com/Node-Running-Scalable-Server-Side-JavaScript/dp/1449398588>

¹⁴⁷<http://www.amazon.com/Node-Web-Development-David-Herron/dp/184951514X>

¹⁴⁸<http://www.amazon.com/Node-Cookbook-David-Mark-Clements/dp/1849517185/>

¹⁴⁹<http://www.codecademy.com/>

¹⁵⁰<http://www.programr.com/>

¹⁵¹<http://www.learnstreet.com/>

- Treehouse¹⁵²
- lynda.com¹⁵³: software, creative and business courses
- Udacity¹⁵⁴: Massive open online courses
- Coursera¹⁵⁵

Startup books and blogs

- Hackers & Painters¹⁵⁶
- The Lean Startup¹⁵⁷
- The Startup Owner's Manual¹⁵⁸
- The Entrepreneur's Guide to Customer Development¹⁵⁹
- Venture Hacks¹⁶⁰
- WebAppLog¹⁶¹

¹⁵²<http://teamtreehouse.com/>

¹⁵³<http://www.lynda.com/>

¹⁵⁴<https://www.udacity.com/>

¹⁵⁵<https://www.coursera.org/>

¹⁵⁶<http://www.amazon.com/Hackers-Painters-Big-Ideas-Computer/dp/1449389554>

¹⁵⁷<http://theleanstartup.com/book>

¹⁵⁸<http://www.amazon.com/Startup-Owners-Manual-Step-Step/dp/0984999302>

¹⁵⁹<http://www.amazon.com/The-Entrepreneurs-Guide-Customer-Development/dp/0982743602/>

¹⁶⁰<http://venturehacks.com/>

¹⁶¹<http://webapplog.com>